

Gauss Sums and the Pólya–Vinogradov Inequality

Rodrigo Raya and Manuel Eberl

October 13, 2025

Abstract

This article provides a full formalisation of Chapter 8 of Apostol’s *Introduction to Analytic Number Theory* [1]. Subjects that are covered are:

- periodic arithmetic functions and their finite Fourier series
- (generalised) Ramanujan sums
- Gauss sums and separable characters
- induced moduli and primitive characters
- the Pólya–Vinogradov inequality

Contents

1	Auxiliary material	3
1.1	Various facts	3
1.2	Neutral element of the Dirichlet product	9
1.3	Multiplicative functions	10
2	Periodic arithmetic functions	11
3	Complex roots of unity	18
4	Geometric sums of roots of unity	22
5	Finite Fourier series	25
5.1	Auxiliary facts	25
5.2	Definition and uniqueness	27
5.3	Expansion of an arithmetical function	32
6	Ramanujan sums	36
6.1	Basic sums	36
6.2	Generalised sums	39

7	Gauss sums	53
7.1	Definition and basic properties	53
7.2	Separability	57
7.3	Induced moduli and primitive characters	61
7.4	The conductor of a character	70
7.5	The connection between primitivity and separability	73
8	The Pólya–Vinogradov Inequality	89
8.1	The case of primitive characters	89
8.2	General case	103

1 Auxiliary material

```

theory Gauss-Sums-Auxiliary
imports
  Dirichlet-L.Dirichlet-Characters
  Dirichlet-Series.Moebius-Mu
  Dirichlet-Series.More-Totient
begin

```

1.1 Various facts

lemma *sum-div-reduce*:

```

fixes  $d :: \text{nat}$  and  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
assumes  $d \text{ dvd } k$   $d > 0$ 
shows  $(\sum n \mid n \in \{1..k\} \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. f\ n) = (\sum c \in \{1..k \text{ div } d\}. f\ (c*d))$ 
by (rule sum.reindex-bij-witness[of -  $\lambda k. k * d$   $\lambda k. k \text{ div } d$ ])
    (use assms in  $\langle \text{fastforce simp: div-le-mono} \rangle$ ) +

```

lemma *prod-div-sub*:

```

fixes  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
assumes finite  $A$   $B \subseteq A$   $\forall b \in B. f\ b \neq 0$ 
shows  $(\prod i \in A - B. f\ i) = ((\prod i \in A. f\ i) \text{ div } (\prod i \in B. f\ i))$ 
using assms

```

proof (*induction card B arbitrary: B*)

case 0

```

  then show ?case
    using infinite-super by fastforce

```

next

```

case (Suc  $n$ )
then show ?case

```

proof –

```

  obtain  $B'$   $x$  where decomp:  $B = B' \cup \{x\} \wedge x \notin B'$ 
    using card-eq-SucD[OF Suc(2) [symmetric]] insert-is-Un by auto
  then have  $B' \text{card}$ :  $\text{card } B' = n$  using Suc(2)
    using Suc.prem(2) assms(1) finite-subset by fastforce
  have  $\text{prod } f\ (A - B) = \text{prod } f\ ((A - B') - \{x\})$ 
    by (simp add: decomp, subst Diff-insert, simp)
  also have  $\dots = (\text{prod } f\ (A - B')) \text{ div } f\ x$ 
    using prod-diff1[of  $A - B'$   $f\ x$ ] Suc decomp by auto
  also have  $\dots = (\text{prod } f\ A \text{ div } \text{prod } f\ B') \text{ div } f\ x$ 
    using Suc(1)[of  $B'$ ] Suc(3)  $B' \text{card decomp}$ 
      Suc.prem(2) Suc.prem(3) by force
  also have  $\dots = \text{prod } f\ A \text{ div } (\text{prod } f\ B' * f\ x)$  by auto
  also have  $\dots = \text{prod } f\ A \text{ div } \text{prod } f\ B$ 
    using decomp Suc.prem(2) assms(1) finite-subset by fastforce
  finally show ?thesis by blast

```

qed

qed

lemma *linear-gcd*:

```

fixes  $a\ b\ c\ d :: \text{nat}$ 
assumes  $a > 0\ b > 0\ c > 0\ d > 0$ 
assumes  $\text{coprime}\ a\ c\ \text{coprime}\ b\ d$ 
shows  $\text{gcd}\ (a*b)\ (c*d) = (\text{gcd}\ a\ d) * (\text{gcd}\ b\ c)$ 
using assms
proof –
  define  $q1 :: \text{nat}$  where  $q1 = a\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d$ 
  define  $q2 :: \text{nat}$  where  $q2 = c\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c$ 
  define  $q3 :: \text{nat}$  where  $q3 = b\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c$ 
  define  $q4 :: \text{nat}$  where  $q4 = d\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d$ 

  have  $\text{coprime}\ q1\ q2\ \text{coprime}\ q3\ q4$ 
    unfolding  $q1\text{-def}\ q2\text{-def}\ q3\text{-def}\ q4\text{-def}$ 
  proof –
    have  $\text{coprime}\ (a\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d)\ c$ 
      using  $\langle \text{coprime}\ a\ c \rangle\ \text{coprime-mult-left-iff}[of\ a\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d\ c]$ 
         $\text{dvd-mult-div-cancel}[OF\ \text{gcd-dvd1},\ of\ a\ b]$  by simp
    then show  $\text{coprime}\ (a\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d)\ (c\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c)$ 
      using  $\text{coprime-mult-right-iff}[of\ a\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c\ c\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c]$ 
         $\text{dvd-div-mult-self}[OF\ \text{gcd-dvd2}[of\ b\ c]]$  by auto
    have  $\text{coprime}\ (b\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c)\ d$ 
      using  $\langle \text{coprime}\ b\ d \rangle\ \text{coprime-mult-left-iff}[of\ b\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c\ d]$ 
         $\text{dvd-mult-div-cancel}[OF\ \text{gcd-dvd1},\ of\ a\ b]$  by simp
    then show  $\text{coprime}\ (b\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c)\ (d\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d)$ 
      using  $\text{coprime-mult-right-iff}[of\ b\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ b\ c\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d\ d\ \text{div}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d]$ 
         $\text{dvd-div-mult-self}[OF\ \text{gcd-dvd2}[of\ b\ c]]$  by auto
  qed

  moreover have  $\text{coprime}\ q1\ q4\ \text{coprime}\ q3\ q2$ 
    unfolding  $q1\text{-def}\ q2\text{-def}\ q3\text{-def}\ q4\text{-def}$ 
    using assms div-gcd-coprime by blast+
  ultimately have  $1 : \text{coprime}\ (q1*q3)\ (q2*q4)$ 
    by simp
  have  $\text{gcd}\ (a*b)\ (c*d) = (\text{gcd}\ a\ d) * (\text{gcd}\ b\ c) * \text{gcd}\ (q1*q3)\ (q2*q4)$ 
    unfolding  $q1\text{-def}\ q2\text{-def}\ q3\text{-def}\ q4\text{-def}$ 
    by  $(\text{subst}\ \text{gcd-mult-distrib-nat}[of\ \text{gcd}\ a\ d * \text{gcd}\ b\ c],$ 
      simp add: field-simps,
      simp add: mult.left-commute semiring-normalization-rules(18))
  from this 1 show  $\text{gcd}\ (a*b)\ (c*d) = (\text{gcd}\ a\ d) * (\text{gcd}\ b\ c)$  by auto
qed

```

lemma *reindex-product-bij*:

```

fixes  $a\ b\ m\ k :: \text{nat}$ 
defines  $S \equiv \{(d1, d2). d1\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd}\ a\ m \wedge d2\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd}\ k\ b\}$ 
defines  $T \equiv \{d. d\ \text{dvd}\ (\text{gcd}\ a\ m) * (\text{gcd}\ k\ b)\}$ 
defines  $f \equiv (\lambda(d1, d2). d1 * d2)$ 
assumes  $\text{coprime}\ a\ k$ 
shows bij-betw  $f\ S\ T$ 
unfolding bij-betw-def
proof

```

```

show inj: inj-on f S
  unfolding f-def
proof -
  {fix d1 d2 d1' d2'
   assume (d1,d2) ∈ S (d1',d2') ∈ S
   then have dvd: d1 dvd gcd a m d2 dvd gcd k b
             d1' dvd gcd a m d2' dvd gcd k b
     unfolding S-def by simp+
     assume f (d1,d2) = f (d1',d2')
     then have eq: d1 * d2 = d1' * d2'
       unfolding f-def by simp
     from eq dvd have eq1: d1 = d1'
       by (simp,meson assms coprime-crossproduct-nat coprime-divisors)
     from eq dvd have eq2: d2 = d2'
       using assms(4) eq1 by auto
     from eq1 eq2 have d1 = d1' ∧ d2 = d2' by simp}
  then show inj-on (λ(d1, d2). d1 * d2) S
    using S-def f-def by (intro inj-onI,blast)
qed
show surj: f ' S = T
proof -
  {fix d
   have d dvd (gcd a m) * (gcd k b)
     ⟷ (∃ d1 d2. d = d1*d2 ∧ d1 dvd gcd a m ∧ d2 dvd gcd k b)
     using division-decomp mult-dvd-mono by blast}
  then show ?thesis
    unfolding f-def S-def T-def image-def
    by auto
qed
qed

lemma p-div-set:
  shows {p. p ∈ prime-factors a ∧ ¬ p dvd N} =
        ({p. p ∈ prime-factors (a*N)} - {p. p ∈ prime-factors N})
  (is ?A = ?B)
proof
  show ?A ⊆ ?B
  proof (simp)
    { fix p
      assume as: p ∈ # prime-factorization a ∧ ¬ p dvd N
      then have 1: p ∈ prime-factors (a * N)
      proof -
        from in-prime-factors-iff[of p a] as
        have a ≠ 0 p dvd a prime p by simp+
        have N ≠ 0 using ⟨¬ p dvd N⟩ by blast
        have a * N ≠ 0 using ⟨a ≠ 0⟩ ⟨N ≠ 0⟩ by auto
        have p dvd a*N using ⟨p dvd a⟩ by simp
        show ?thesis
          using ⟨a*N ≠ 0⟩ ⟨p dvd a*N⟩ ⟨prime p⟩ in-prime-factors-iff by blast
      }
    }
  }

```

```

qed
from as have 2:  $p \notin \text{prime-factors } N$  by blast
from 1 2 have  $p \in \text{prime-factors } (a * N) - \text{prime-factors } N$ 
  by blast
}
then show  $\{p. p \in \# \text{ prime-factorization } a \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } N\}$ 
   $\subseteq \text{prime-factors } (a * N) - \text{prime-factors } N$  by blast
qed

show  $?B \subseteq ?A$ 
proof (simp)
{ fix p
  assume as:  $p \in \text{prime-factors } (a * N) - \text{prime-factors } N$ 
  then have 1:  $\neg p \text{ dvd } N$ 
  proof -
    from as have  $p \in \text{prime-factors } (a * N)$   $p \notin \text{prime-factors } N$ 
    using DiffD1 DiffD2 by blast+
    then show ?thesis by (simp add: in-prime-factors-iff)
  qed
  have 2:  $p \in \# \text{ prime-factorization } a$ 
  proof -
    have  $p \text{ dvd } (a * N)$   $\text{prime } p$   $a * N \neq 0$  using in-prime-factors-iff as by blast+
    have  $p \text{ dvd } a$  using  $\langle \neg p \text{ dvd } N \rangle$   $\text{prime-dvd-multD}[OF \langle \text{prime } p \rangle \langle p \text{ dvd } (a * N) \rangle]$  by blast
    have  $a \neq 0$  using  $\langle a * N \neq 0 \rangle$  by simp
    show ?thesis using in-prime-factors-iff  $\langle a \neq 0 \rangle \langle p \text{ dvd } a \rangle \langle \text{prime } p \rangle$  by
blast
  qed
  from 1 2 have  $p \in \{p. p \in \# \text{ prime-factorization } a \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } N\}$  by blast
}
then show  $\text{prime-factors } (a * N) - \text{prime-factors } N$ 
   $\subseteq \{p. p \in \# \text{ prime-factorization } a \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } N\}$  by blast
qed
qed

lemma coprime-iff-prime-factors-disjoint:
  fixes  $x y :: 'a :: \text{factorial-semiring}$ 
  assumes  $x \neq 0$   $y \neq 0$ 
  shows  $\text{coprime } x y \longleftrightarrow \text{prime-factors } x \cap \text{prime-factors } y = \{\}$ 
proof
  assume coprime  $x y$ 
  have False if  $p \in \text{prime-factors } x$   $p \in \text{prime-factors } y$  for  $p$ 
  proof -
    from that assms have  $p \text{ dvd } x$   $p \text{ dvd } y$ 
    by (auto simp: prime-factors-dvd)
    with  $\langle \text{coprime } x y \rangle$  have  $p \text{ dvd } 1$ 
    using coprime-common-divisor by auto
    with that assms show False by (auto simp: prime-factors-dvd)
  qed

```

```

    thus prime-factors  $x \cap$  prime-factors  $y = \{\}$  by auto
next
  assume disjoint: prime-factors  $x \cap$  prime-factors  $y = \{\}$ 
  show coprime  $x y$ 
  proof (rule coprimeI)
    fix d assume d:  $d \text{ dvd } x \wedge d \text{ dvd } y$ 
    show is-unit d
    proof (rule ccontr)
      assume  $\neg$ is-unit d
      moreover from this and d assms have  $d \neq 0$  by auto
      ultimately obtain p where p: prime p  $\wedge d \text{ dvd } d$ 
      using prime-divisor-exists by auto
      with d and assms have  $p \in$  prime-factors  $x \cap$  prime-factors  $y$ 
      by (auto simp: prime-factors-dvd)
      with disjoint show False by auto
    qed
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma coprime-cong-prime-factors:
  fixes  $x y :: 'a :: \text{factorial-semiring-gcd}$ 
  assumes  $x \neq 0 \wedge y \neq 0 \wedge x' \neq 0 \wedge y' \neq 0$ 
  assumes prime-factors  $x =$  prime-factors  $x'$ 
  assumes prime-factors  $y =$  prime-factors  $y'$ 
  shows  $\text{coprime } x y \longleftrightarrow \text{coprime } x' y'$ 
  using assms by (simp add: coprime-iff-prime-factors-disjoint)

```

```

lemma moebius-prod-not-coprime:
  assumes  $\neg$  coprime  $N d$ 
  shows moebius-mu  $(N*d) = 0$ 
proof -
  from assms obtain l where l-form:  $l \text{ dvd } N \wedge l \text{ dvd } d \wedge \neg$  is-unit l
  unfolding coprime-def by blast
  then have  $l * l \text{ dvd } N * d$  using mult-dvd-mono by auto
  then have  $l^2 \text{ dvd } N*d$  by (subst power2-eq-square,blast)
  then have  $\neg$  squarefree  $(N*d)$ 
  unfolding squarefree-def coprime-def using l-form by blast
  then show moebius-mu  $(N*d) = 0$ 
  using moebius-mu-def by auto
qed

```

Theorem 2.18

```

lemma sum-divisors-moebius-mu-times-multiplicative:
  fixes  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a :: \{\text{comm-ring-1}\}$ 
  assumes multiplicative-function f and  $n > 0$ 
  shows  $(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } n. \text{moebius-mu } d * f d) = (\prod p \in \text{prime-factors } n. 1 - f p)$ 
proof -
  define g where  $g = (\lambda n. \sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } n. \text{moebius-mu } d * f d)$ 
  define g' where  $g' = \text{dirichlet-prod } (\lambda n. \text{moebius-mu } n * f n) (\lambda n. \text{if } n = 0 \text{ then}$ 

```

```

0 else 1)
interpret f: multiplicative-function f by fact
have multiplicative-function (λn. if n = 0 then 0 else 1 :: 'a)
  by standard auto
interpret multiplicative-function g' unfolding g'-def
  by (intro multiplicative-dirichlet-prod multiplicative-function-mult
        moebius-mu.multiplicative-function-axioms assms) fact+

have g'-primepow: g' (p ^ k) = 1 - f p if prime p k > 0 for p k
proof -
  have g' (p ^ k) = (∑ i ≤ k. moebius-mu (p ^ i) * f (p ^ i))
    using that by (simp add: g'-def dirichlet-prod-prime-power)
  also have ... = (∑ i ∈ {0, 1}. moebius-mu (p ^ i) * f (p ^ i))
    using that by (intro sum.mono-neutral-right) (auto simp: moebius-mu-power')
  also have ... = 1 - f p
    using that by (simp add: moebius-mu.prime)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

have g' n = g n
  by (simp add: g-def g'-def dirichlet-prod-def)
also from assms have g' n = (∏ p ∈ prime-factors n. g' (p ^ multiplicity p n))
  by (intro prod-prime-factors) auto
also have ... = (∏ p ∈ prime-factors n. 1 - f p)
  by (intro prod.cong) (auto simp: g'-primepow prime-factors-multiplicity)
finally show ?thesis by (simp add: g-def)
qed

lemma multiplicative-ind-coprime [intro]: multiplicative-function (ind (coprime N))
  by (intro multiplicative-function-ind) auto

lemma sum-divisors-moebius-mu-times-multiplicative-revisited:
  fixes f :: nat ⇒ 'a :: {comm-ring-1}
  assumes multiplicative-function f n > 0 N > 0
  shows (∑ d | d dvd n ∧ coprime N d. moebius-mu d * f d) =
    (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors n ∧ ¬ (p dvd N)}. 1 - f p)
proof -
  have (∑ d | d dvd n ∧ coprime N d. moebius-mu d * f d) =
    (∑ d | d dvd n. moebius-mu d * (ind (coprime N) d * f d))
    using assms by (intro sum.mono-neutral-cong-left) (auto simp: ind-def)
  also have ... = (∏ p ∈ prime-factors n. 1 - ind (coprime N) p * f p)
    using assms by (intro sum-divisors-moebius-mu-times-multiplicative)
    (auto intro: multiplicative-function-mult)
  also from assms have ... = (∏ p | p ∈ prime-factors n ∧ ¬ (p dvd N). 1 - f p)
    by (intro prod.mono-neutral-cong-right)
    (auto simp: ind-def prime-factors-dvd coprime-commute dest: prime-imp-coprime)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```


1.2 Neutral element of the Dirichlet product

definition *dirichlet-prod-neutral* $n = (\text{if } n = 1 \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0)$ **for** $n :: \text{nat}$

lemma *dirichlet-prod-neutral-intro*:

fixes $S :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ **and** $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$

defines $S \equiv (\lambda(n::\text{nat}). (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n. (f \ k \ n)))$

shows $S(n) = (\sum k \in \{1..n\}. f \ k \ n * \text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k \ n))$

proof –

let $?g = \lambda k. (f \ k \ n) * (\text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k \ n))$

have $\text{zeros}: \forall k \in \{1..n\} - \{k. k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n\}. ?g \ k = 0$

proof

fix k

assume $k \in \{1..n\} - \{k \in \{1..n\}. \text{coprime } k \ n\}$

then show $(f \ k \ n) * \text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k \ n) = 0$

by (*simp add: dirichlet-prod-neutral-def*[of $\text{gcd } k \ n$] *split: if-splits,presburger*)

qed

have $S \ n = (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n. (f \ k \ n))$

by (*simp add: S-def*)

also have $\dots = \text{sum } ?g \ \{k. k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n\}$

by (*simp add: dirichlet-prod-neutral-def split: if-splits*)

also have $\dots = \text{sum } ?g \ \{1..n\}$

by (*intro sum.mono-neutral-left, auto simp add: zeros*)

finally show *?thesis* **by** *blast*

qed

lemma *dirichlet-prod-neutral-right-neutral*:

dirichlet-prod f *dirichlet-prod-neutral* $n = f \ n$ **if** $n > 0$ **for** $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
and n

proof –

{fix $d :: \text{nat}$

assume $d \ \text{dvd} \ n$

then have $\text{eq}: n = d \longleftrightarrow n \ \text{div} \ d = 1$

using *div-self that dvd-mult-div-cancel* **by** *force*

have $f(d) * \text{dirichlet-prod-neutral}(n \ \text{div} \ d) = (\text{if } n = d \text{ then } f(d) \text{ else } 0)$

by (*simp add: dirichlet-prod-neutral-def eq*)}

note *summand = this*

have *dirichlet-prod* f *dirichlet-prod-neutral* $n =$

$(\sum d \mid d \ \text{dvd} \ n. f(d) * \text{dirichlet-prod-neutral}(n \ \text{div} \ d))$

unfolding *dirichlet-prod-def* **by** *blast*

also have $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \ \text{dvd} \ n. (\text{if } n = d \text{ then } f(d) \text{ else } 0))$

using *summand* **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = (\sum d \mid d = n. (\text{if } n = d \text{ then } f(d) \text{ else } 0))$

using *that* **by** (*intro sum.mono-neutral-right, auto*)

also have $\dots = f(n)$ **by** *simp*

finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*

qed

```

lemma dirichlet-prod-neutral-left-neutral:
  dirichlet-prod dirichlet-prod-neutral f n = f n
  if  $n > 0$  for  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$  and  $n$ 
    using dirichlet-prod-neutral-right-neutral[OF that, of f]
      dirichlet-prod-commutes[of f dirichlet-prod-neutral]
    by argo

corollary I-right-neutral-0:
  fixes  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
  assumes  $f\ 0 = 0$ 
  shows dirichlet-prod f dirichlet-prod-neutral n = f n
  using assms dirichlet-prod-neutral-right-neutral by (cases n, simp, blast)

```

1.3 Multiplicative functions

```

lemma mult-id: multiplicative-function id
  by (simp add: multiplicative-function-def)

lemma mult-moebius: multiplicative-function moebius-mu
  using Moebius-Mu.moebius-mu.multiplicative-function-axioms
  by simp

lemma mult-of-nat: multiplicative-function of-nat
  using multiplicative-function-def of-nat-0 of-nat-1 of-nat-mult by blast

lemma mult-of-nat-c: completely-multiplicative-function of-nat
  by (simp add: completely-multiplicative-function-def)

lemma completely-multiplicative-nonzero:
  fixes  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
  assumes completely-multiplicative-function f
     $d \neq 0$ 
     $\bigwedge p. \text{prime } p \implies f(p) \neq 0$ 
  shows  $f(d) \neq 0$ 
  using assms(2)
proof (induction d rule: nat-less-induct)
  case ( $1\ n$ )
  then show ?case
  proof (cases n = 1)
  case True
  then show ?thesis
    using assms(1)
    unfolding completely-multiplicative-function-def by simp
  next
  case False
  then obtain  $p$  where  $2:\text{prime } p \wedge p \text{ dvd } n$ 
    using prime-factor-nat by blast
  then obtain  $a$  where  $3: n = p * a \ a \neq 0$ 
    using  $1$  by auto

```

```

then have 4:  $f(a) \neq 0$  using 1
  using 2 prime-nat-iff by fastforce
have 5:  $f(p) \neq 0$  using assms(3) 2 by simp
from 3 4 5 show ?thesis
  by (simp add: assms(1) completely-multiplicative-function.mult)
qed
qed

```

```

lemma multipl-div:
  fixes  $m\ k\ d1\ d2 :: \text{nat}$  and  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
  assumes multiplicative-function  $f\ d1\ dvd\ m\ d2\ dvd\ k\ coprime\ m\ k$ 
  shows  $f((m*k)\ div\ (d1*d2)) = f(m\ div\ d1) * f(k\ div\ d2)$ 
  using assms
  unfolding multiplicative-function-def
  using assms(1) multiplicative-function.mult-coprime by fastforce

```

```

lemma multipl-div-mono:
  fixes  $m\ k\ d :: \text{nat}$  and  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ 
  assumes completely-multiplicative-function  $f$ 
     $d\ dvd\ k\ d > 0$ 
     $\bigwedge p. \text{prime } p \implies f(p) \neq 0$ 
  shows  $f(k\ div\ d) = f(k)\ div\ f(d)$ 
proof -
  have  $d \neq 0$  using assms(2,3) by auto
  then have nz:  $f(d) \neq 0$  using assms(1,4) completely-multiplicative-nonzero by
simp

```

```

  from assms(2,3) obtain  $a$  where  $div: k = a * d$  by fastforce
  have  $f(k\ div\ d) = f((a*d)\ div\ d)$  using div by simp
  also have  $\dots = f(a)$  using assms(3) div by simp
  also have  $\dots = f(a)*f(d)\ div\ f(d)$  using nz by auto
  also have  $\dots = f(a*d)\ div\ f(d)$ 
    by (simp add: div assms(1) completely-multiplicative-function.mult)
  also have  $\dots = f(k)\ div\ f(d)$  using div by simp
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed

```

```

lemma comp-to-mult: completely-multiplicative-function  $f \implies$ 
  multiplicative-function  $f$ 
  unfolding completely-multiplicative-function-def
  multiplicative-function-def by auto

```

end

2 Periodic arithmetic functions

```

theory Periodic-Arithmetic
imports
  Complex-Main

```

HOL—Number-Theory.Cong
begin

definition

periodic-arithmetic $f\ k = (\forall n. f\ (n+k) = f\ n)$
for $n :: \text{int}$ **and** $k :: \text{nat}$ **and** $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$

lemma *const-periodic-arithmetic*: *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda x. y)\ k$
unfolding *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** *blast*

lemma *add-periodic-arithmetic*:

fixes $f\ g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $f\ k$
assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $g\ k$
shows *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda n. f\ n + g\ n)\ k$
using *assms* **unfolding** *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** *simp*

lemma *mult-periodic-arithmetic*:

fixes $f\ g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $f\ k$
assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $g\ k$
shows *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda n. f\ n * g\ n)\ k$
using *assms* **unfolding** *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** *simp*

lemma *scalar-mult-periodic-arithmetic*:

fixes $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ **and** $a :: \text{complex}$
assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $f\ k$
shows *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda n. a * f\ n)\ k$
using *mult-periodic-arithmetic*[*OF const-periodic-arithmetic*[*of a k*] *assms*(1)] **by**
simp

lemma *fin-sum-periodic-arithmetic-set*:

fixes $f\ g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
assumes $\forall i \in A. \text{periodic-arithmetic } (h\ i)\ k$
shows *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda n. \sum i \in A. h\ i\ n)\ k$
using *assms* **by** (*simp add: periodic-arithmetic-def*)

lemma *mult-period*:

assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $g\ k$
shows *periodic-arithmetic* $g\ (k*q)$
using *assms*

proof (*induction q*)

case 0 **then show** ?*case* **unfolding** *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** *simp*

next

case (*Suc m*)

then show ?*case*

unfolding *periodic-arithmetic-def*

proof —

{ **fix** n

```

    have  $g (n + k * Suc\ m) = g (n + k + k * m)$ 
      by (simp add: algebra-simps)
    also have  $\dots = g(n)$ 
      using Suc.IH[OF Suc.prem] assms
      unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def by simp
    finally have  $g (n + k * Suc\ m) = g(n)$  by blast
  }
  then show  $\forall n. g (n + k * Suc\ m) = g\ n$  by auto
qed
qed

```

lemma *unique-periodic-arithmetic-extension:*

```

  assumes  $k > 0$ 
  assumes  $\forall j < k. g\ j = h\ j$ 
  assumes periodic-arithmetic  $g\ k$  and periodic-arithmetic  $h\ k$ 
  shows  $g\ i = h\ i$ 
proof (cases  $i < k$ )
  case True then show ?thesis using assms by simp
next
  case False then show ?thesis
  proof -
    have  $k * (i \text{ div } k) + (i \text{ mod } k) = i \wedge (i \text{ mod } k) < k$ 
      by (simp add: assms(1) algebra-simps)
    then obtain  $q\ r$  where euclid-div:  $k*q + r = i \wedge r < k$ 
      using mult.commute by blast
    from assms(3) assms(4)
    have periodic-arithmetic  $g\ (k*q)$  periodic-arithmetic  $h\ (k*q)$ 
      using mult-period by simp+
    have  $g(k*q+r) = g(r)$ 
      using  $\langle \text{periodic-arithmetic } g\ (k*q) \rangle$  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
      using add.commute[of  $k*q\ r$ ] by presburger
    also have  $\dots = h(r)$ 
      using euclid-div assms(2) by simp
    also have  $\dots = h(k*q+r)$ 
      using  $\langle \text{periodic-arithmetic } h\ (k*q) \rangle$  add.commute[of  $k*q\ r$ ]
      unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def by presburger
    also have  $\dots = h(i)$  using euclid-div by simp
    finally show  $g(i) = h(i)$  using euclid-div by simp
  qed
qed

```

lemma *periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic:*

```

  assumes periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k$ 
  shows  $(\sum l \in \{m..n\}. f\ l) = (\sum l \in \{m+k..n+k\}. f\ l)$ 
  using periodic-arithmetic-def assms
  by (intro sum.reindex-bij-witness
      [of  $\{m..n\}\ \lambda l. l-k\ \lambda l. l+k\ \{m+k..n+k\}\ f\ f])
      auto$ 
```

```

lemma mod-periodic-arithmetic:
  fixes  $n\ m :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k$ 
  assumes  $n \bmod k = m \bmod k$ 
  shows  $f\ n = f\ m$ 
proof -
  obtain  $q$  where  $1: n = q*k + (n \bmod k)$ 
    using div-mult-mod-eq[of  $n\ k, \text{symmetric}$ ] by blast
  obtain  $q'$  where  $2: m = q'*k + (m \bmod k)$ 
    using div-mult-mod-eq[of  $m\ k, \text{symmetric}$ ] by blast
  from  $1$  have  $f\ n = f\ (q*k + (n \bmod k))$  by auto
  also have  $\dots = f\ (n \bmod k)$ 
    using mult-period[of  $f\ k\ q$ ] assms( $1$ ) periodic-arithmetic-def[of  $f\ k*q$ ]
    by (simp add: algebra-simps, subst add.commute, blast)
  also have  $\dots = f\ (m \bmod k)$  using assms( $2$ ) by auto
  also have  $\dots = f\ (q'*k + (m \bmod k))$ 
    using mult-period[of  $f\ k\ q'$ ] assms( $1$ ) periodic-arithmetic-def[of  $f\ k*q'$ ]
    by (simp add: algebra-simps, subst add.commute, presburger)
  also have  $\dots = f\ m$  using  $2$  by auto
  finally show  $f\ n = f\ m$  by simp
qed

```

```

lemma cong-periodic-arithmetic:
  assumes periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k\ [a = b] \ (mod\ k)$ 
  shows  $f\ a = f\ b$ 
  using assms mod-periodic-arithmetic[of  $f\ k\ a\ b$ ] by (auto simp: cong-def)

```

```

lemma cong-nat-imp-eq:
  fixes  $m :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes  $m > 0\ x \in \{a..<a+m\}\ y \in \{a..<a+m\}\ [x = y] \ (mod\ m)$ 
  shows  $x = y$ 
  using assms
proof (induction x y rule: linorder-wlog)
  case (le  $x\ y$ )
  have  $[y - x = 0] \ (mod\ m)$ 
    using cong-diff-iff-cong-0-nat cong-sym le by blast
  thus  $x = y$ 
    using le by (auto simp: cong-def)
qed (auto simp: cong-sym)

```

```

lemma inj-on-mod-nat:
  fixes  $m :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes  $m > 0$ 
  shows inj-on  $(\lambda x. x \bmod m)\ \{a..<a+m\}$ 
proof
  fix  $x\ y$  assume  $xy: x \in \{a..<a+m\}\ y \in \{a..<a+m\}$  and  $eq: x \bmod m = y \bmod m$ 
  from  $\langle m > 0 \rangle$  and  $xy$  show  $x = y$ 
    by (rule cong-nat-imp-eq) (use eq in <simp-all add: cong-def>)

```

qed

lemma *bij-betw-mod-nat-atLeastLessThan*:

fixes $k\ d :: \text{nat}$

assumes $k > 0$

defines $g \equiv (\lambda i. \text{nat } ((\text{int } i - \text{int } d) \bmod \text{int } k) + d)$

shows $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda i. i \bmod k) \{d..<d+k\} \{..<k\}$

unfolding *bij-betw-def*

proof

show $\text{inj: inj-on } (\lambda i. i \bmod k) \{d..<d+k\}$

by (*rule inj-on-mod-nat*) *fact+*

have $(\lambda i. i \bmod k) ' \{d..<d+k\} \subseteq \{..<k\}$

by *auto*

moreover have $\text{card } ((\lambda i. i \bmod k) ' \{d..<d+k\}) = \text{card } \{..<k\}$

using *inj* **by** (*subst card-image*) *auto*

ultimately show $(\lambda i. i \bmod k) ' \{d..<d+k\} = \{..<k\}$

by (*intro card-subset-eq*) *auto*

qed

lemma *periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift*:

fixes $k\ d :: \text{nat}$

assumes *periodic-arithmetic* $f\ k\ k > 0\ d > 0$

shows $(\sum l \in \{0..k-1\}. f\ l) = (\sum l \in \{d..d+k-1\}. f\ l)$

proof –

have $(\sum l \in \{0..k-1\}. f\ l) = (\sum l \in \{0..<k\}. f\ l)$

using *assms(2)* **by** (*intro sum.cong*) *auto*

also have $\dots = (\sum l \in \{d..<d+k\}. f\ (l \bmod k))$

using *assms(2)*

by (*simp add: sum.reindex-bij-betw[OF bij-betw-mod-nat-atLeastLessThan[of k d]]*

lessThan-atLeast0)

also have $\dots = (\sum l \in \{d..<d+k\}. f\ l)$

using *mod-periodic-arithmetic[of f k]* *assms(1)* *sum.cong*

by (*meson mod-mod-trivial*)

also have $\dots = (\sum l \in \{d..d+k-1\}. f\ l)$

using *assms(2,3)* **by** (*intro sum.cong*) *auto*

finally show *?thesis* **by** *auto*

qed

lemma *self-bij-0-k*:

fixes $a\ k :: \text{nat}$

assumes *coprime* $a\ k$ $[a*i = 1] \pmod k$ $k > 0$

shows $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda r. r*a \bmod k) \{0..k-1\} \{0..k-1\}$

unfolding *bij-betw-def*

proof

show $\text{inj-on } (\lambda r. r*a \bmod k) \{0..k-1\}$

proof –

{fix $r1\ r2$

assume *in-k*: $r1 \in \{0..k-1\}\ r2 \in \{0..k-1\}$

```

assume as: [r1*a = r2*a] (mod k)
then have [r1*a*i = r2*a*i] (mod k)
  using cong-scalar-right by blast
then have [r1 = r2] (mod k)
  using cong-mult-rcancel-nat as assms(1) by simp
then have r1 = r2 using in-k
  using assms(3) cong-less-modulus-unique-nat by auto}
note eq = this
show ?thesis unfolding inj-on-def
  by (safe, simp add: eq cong-def)
qed
define f where f = (λr. r * a mod k)
show f ' {0..k - 1} = {0..k - 1}
  unfolding image-def
proof (standard)
show {y. ∃ x ∈ {0..k - 1}. y = f x} ⊆ {0..k - 1}
proof -
  {fix y
  assume y ∈ {y. ∃ x ∈ {0..k - 1}. y = f x}
  then obtain x where y = f x by blast
  then have y ∈ {0..k-1}
    unfolding f-def
    using Suc-pred assms(3) lessThan-Suc-atMost by fastforce}
  then show ?thesis by blast
qed
show {0..k - 1} ⊆ {y. ∃ x ∈ {0..k - 1}. y = f x}
proof -
  {fix x
  assume ass: x ∈ {0..k-1}
  then have x * i mod k ∈ {0..k-1}
  proof -
    have x * i mod k ∈ {0..<k} by (simp add: assms(3))
    have {0..<k} = {0..k-1} using Suc-diff-1 assms(3) by auto
    show ?thesis using ⟨x * i mod k ∈ {0..<k}⟩ ⟨{0..<k} = {0..k-1}⟩ by
blast
qed
then have f (x * i mod k) = x
proof -
  have f (x * i mod k) = (x * i mod k) * a mod k
    unfolding f-def by blast
  also have ... = (x*i*a) mod k
    by (simp add: mod-mult-left-eq)
  also have ... = (x*1) mod k
    using assms(2)
    unfolding cong-def
    by (subst mult.assoc, subst (2) mult.commute,
      subst mod-mult-right-eq[symmetric], simp)
  also have ... = x using ass assms(3) by auto
  finally show ?thesis .

```



```

    qed
    then have  $x \in \{y. \exists x \in \{0..k-1\}. y = f\ x\}$ 
      using  $\langle x * i \bmod k \in \{0..k-1\} \rangle$  by force
  }
  then show ?thesis by blast
qed
qed
qed

lemma periodic-arithmetic-homothecy:
  assumes periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k$ 
  shows periodic-arithmetic  $(\lambda l. f\ (l*a))\ k$ 
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix  $n$ 
  have  $f\ ((n + k) * a) = f\ (n*a + k*a)$  by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  also have  $\dots = f\ (n*a)$ 
    using mult-period[OF assms] unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def by simp
  finally show  $f\ ((n + k) * a) = f\ (n * a)$  by simp
qed

theorem periodic-arithmetic-remove-homothecy:
  assumes coprime  $a\ k$  periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k$   $k > 0$ 
  shows  $(\sum l=1..k. f\ l) = (\sum l=1..k. f\ (l*a))$ 
proof -
  obtain  $i$  where inv:  $[a*i = 1] \pmod k$ 
    using assms(1) coprime-iff-invertible-nat[of  $a\ k$ ] by auto
  from this self-bij-0-k assms
  have bij: bij-betw  $(\lambda r. r * a \bmod k)\ \{0..k-1\}\ \{0..k-1\}$  by blast

  have  $(\sum l = 1..k. f(l)) = (\sum l = 0..k-1. f(l))$ 
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[of  $f\ k\ 1$ ] assms by simp
  also have  $\dots = (\sum l = 0..k-1. f(l*a \bmod k))$ 
    using sum.reindex-bij-betw[OF bij, symmetric] by blast
  also have  $\dots = (\sum l = 0..k-1. f(l*a))$ 
    by (intro sum.cong refl) (use mod-periodic-arithmetic[OF assms(2)] mod-mod-trivial
in blast)
  also have  $\dots = (\sum l = 1..k. f(l*a))$ 
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[of  $(\lambda l. f(l*a))\ k\ 1$ ]
      periodic-arithmetic-homothecy[OF assms(2)] assms(3) by fastforce
  finally show ?thesis by blast
qed

end

theory Complex-Roots-Of-Unity
imports
  HOL-Analysis.Analysis
  Periodic-Arithmetic

```

begin

3 Complex roots of unity

definition

$unity_root\ k\ n = cis\ (2 * pi * of_int\ n / of_nat\ k)$

lemma

$unity_root\text{-}k\text{-}0\ [simp]:\ unity_root\ k\ 0 = 1$ **and**

$unity_root\text{-}0\text{-}n\ [simp]:\ unity_root\ 0\ n = 1$

unfolding $unity_root\text{-}def$ **by** $simp+$

lemma $unity_root\text{-}conv\text{-}exp$:

$unity_root\ k\ n = exp\ (of_real\ (2*pi*n/k) * i)$

unfolding $unity_root\text{-}def$

by $(subst\ cis\text{-}conv\text{-}exp, subst\ mult.commute, blast)$

lemma $unity_root\text{-}mod$:

$unity_root\ k\ (n\ mod\ int\ k) = unity_root\ k\ n$

proof $(cases\ k = 0)$

case $True$ **then show** $?thesis$ **by** $simp$

next

case $False$

obtain $q :: int$ **where** $q\text{-}def: n = q*k + (n\ mod\ k)$

using $div\text{-}mult\text{-}mod\text{-}eq[symmetric]$ **by** $blast$

have $n / k = q + (n\ mod\ k) / k$

proof $(auto\ simp\ add: divide\text{-}simps\ False)$

have $real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ n = real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ (q*k + (n\ mod\ k))$

using $q\text{-}def$ **by** $simp$

also have $\dots = real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ q * real\ k + real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ (n\ mod\ k)$

using $of\text{-}int\text{-}add\ of\text{-}int\text{-}mult$ **by** $simp$

finally show $real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ n = real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ q * real\ k + real\text{-}of\text{-}int\ (n\ mod\ k)$

by $blast$

qed

then have $(2*pi*n/k) = 2*pi*q + (2*pi*(n\ mod\ k)/k)$

using $False$ **by** $(auto\ simp\ add: field\text{-}simps)$

then have $(2*pi*n/k)*i = 2*pi*q*i + (2*pi*(n\ mod\ k)/k)*i$ **(is** $?l = ?r1 + ?r2)$

by $(auto\ simp\ add: algebra\text{-}simps)$

then have $exp\ ?l = exp\ ?r2$

using $exp\text{-}plus\text{-}2pin$ **by** $(simp\ add: exp\text{-}add\ mult.commute)$

then show $?thesis$

using $unity_root\text{-}def\ unity_root\text{-}conv\text{-}exp$ **by** $simp$

qed

lemma $unity_root\text{-}cong$:

assumes $[m = n]\ (mod\ int\ k)$

shows $unity_root\ k\ m = unity_root\ k\ n$

proof $-$

from *assms* **have** $m \bmod \text{int } k = n \bmod \text{int } k$
by (*auto simp: cong-def*)
hence $\text{unity-root } k (m \bmod \text{int } k) = \text{unity-root } k (n \bmod \text{int } k)$
by *simp*
thus *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: unity-root-mod*)
qed

lemma *unity-root-mod-nat*:
 $\text{unity-root } k (\text{nat } (n \bmod \text{int } k)) = \text{unity-root } k n$
proof (*cases k*)
case (*Suc l*)
then **have** $n \bmod \text{int } k \geq 0$ **by** *auto*
show *?thesis*
unfolding *int-nat-eq*
by (*simp add: <n mod int k ≥ 0> unity-root-mod*)
qed *auto*

lemma *unity-root-eqD*:
assumes *gr*: $k > 0$
assumes *eq*: $\text{unity-root } k i = \text{unity-root } k j$
shows $i \bmod k = j \bmod k$
proof –
let *?arg1* = $(2 * \pi * i / k) * i$
let *?arg2* = $(2 * \pi * j / k) * i$
from *eq* *unity-root-conv-exp* **have** $\exp ?arg1 = \exp ?arg2$ **by** *simp*
from *this exp-eq*
obtain $n :: \text{int}$ **where** $?arg1 = ?arg2 + (2 * n * \pi) * i$ **by** *blast*
then **have** $e1: ?arg1 - ?arg2 = 2 * n * \pi * i$ **by** *simp*
have $e2: ?arg1 - ?arg2 = 2 * (i - j) * (1 / k) * \pi * i$
by (*auto simp add: algebra-simps*)
from $e1 e2$ **have** $2 * n * \pi * i = 2 * (i - j) * (1 / k) * \pi * i$ **by** *simp*
then **have** $2 * n * k * \pi * i = 2 * (i - j) * \pi * i$
by (*simp add: divide-simps <k > 0> (simp add: field-simps)*)
then **have** $2 * n * k = 2 * (i - j)$
by (*meson complex-i-not-zero mult-cancel-right of-int-eq-iff of-real-eq-iff pi-neq-zero*)
then **have** $n * k = i - j$ **by** *auto*
then **show** *?thesis* **by** *Groebner-Basis.algebra*
qed

lemma *unity-root-eq-1-iff*:
fixes $k n :: \text{nat}$
assumes $k > 0$
shows $\text{unity-root } k n = 1 \longleftrightarrow k \text{ dvd } n$
proof –
have $\text{unity-root } k n = \exp ((2 * \pi * n / k) * i)$
by (*simp add: unity-root-conv-exp*)
also **have** $\exp ((2 * \pi * n / k) * i) = 1 \longleftrightarrow k \text{ dvd } n$
using *complex-root-unity-eq-1 [of k n] assms*
by (*auto simp add: algebra-simps*)

finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*
qed

lemma *unity-root-nonzero* [*simp*]: *unity-root* *n* *k* $\neq 0$
by (*auto simp: unity-root-def*)

lemma *unity-root-pow*: *unity-root* *k* *n* $\wedge m = \text{unity-root } k (n * m)$
using *unity-root-def*
by (*simp add: Complex.DeMoivre mult.commute algebra-split-simps(6)*)

lemma *unity-root-add*: *unity-root* *k* (*m* + *n*) = *unity-root* *k* *m* * *unity-root* *k* *n*
by (*simp add: unity-root-conv-exp add-divide-distrib algebra-simps exp-add*)

lemma *unity-root-uminus*: *unity-root* *k* ($-m$) = *cnj* (*unity-root* *k* *m*)
unfolding *unity-root-conv-exp exp-cnj* **by** *simp*

lemma *inverse-unity-root*: *inverse* (*unity-root* *k* *m*) = *cnj* (*unity-root* *k* *m*)
unfolding *unity-root-conv-exp exp-cnj* **by** (*simp add: field-simps exp-minus*)

lemma *unity-root-diff*: *unity-root* *k* (*m* - *n*) = *unity-root* *k* *m* * *cnj* (*unity-root* *k* *n*)
using *unity-root-add*[*of k m -n*] **by** (*simp add: unity-root-uminus*)

lemma *unity-root-eq-1-iff-int*:
fixes *k* :: *nat* **and** *n* :: *int*
assumes *k* > 0
shows *unity-root* *k* *n* = 1 $\longleftrightarrow k \text{ dvd } n$
proof (*cases n* ≥ 0)
case *True*
obtain *n'* **where** *n* = *int* *n'*
using *zero-le-imp-eq-int*[*OF True*] **by** *blast*
then show *?thesis*
using *unity-root-eq-1-iff*[*OF* $\langle k > 0 \rangle$, *of n'*] *of-nat-dvd-iff* **by** *blast*

next

case *False*
then have $-n \geq 0$ **by** *auto*
have *unity-root* *k* *n* = *inverse* (*unity-root* *k* ($-n$))
unfolding *inverse-unity-root* **by** (*simp add: unity-root-uminus*)
then have (*unity-root* *k* *n* = 1) = (*unity-root* *k* ($-n$) = 1)
by *simp*
also have (*unity-root* *k* ($-n$) = 1) = (*k* *dvd* ($-n$))
using *unity-root-eq-1-iff*[*of k nat* ($-n$), *OF* $\langle k > 0 \rangle$] *False*
int-dvd-int-iff[*of k nat* ($-n$)] *nat-0-le*[*OF* $\langle -n \geq 0 \rangle$] **by** *auto*
finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*

qed

lemma *unity-root-eq-1* [*simp*]: *int* *k* *dvd* *n* $\implies \text{unity-root } k n = 1$
by (*cases k* = 0) (*auto simp: unity-root-eq-1-iff-int*)

```

lemma unity-periodic-arithmetic:
  periodic-arithmetic (unity-root k) k
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix n
  have unity-root k (n + k) = unity-root k ((n+k) mod k)
    using unity-root-mod[of k] zmod-int by presburger
  also have unity-root k ((n+k) mod k) = unity-root k n
    using unity-root-mod zmod-int by auto
  finally show unity-root k (n + k) = unity-root k n by simp
qed

lemma unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult:
  periodic-arithmetic (λn. unity-root k (m * int n)) k
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix n
  have unity-root k (m * int (n + k)) =
    unity-root k (m*n + m*k)
    by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  also have ... = unity-root k (m*n)
    using unity-root-mod[of k m * int n] unity-root-mod[of k m * int n + m * int
k]
    mod-mult-self3 by presburger
  finally show unity-root k (m * int (n + k)) =
    unity-root k (m * int n) by simp
qed

lemma unity-root-periodic-arithmetic-mult-minus:
  shows periodic-arithmetic (λi. unity-root k (-int i*int m)) k
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix n
  have unity-root k (-(n + k) * m) = cnj (unity-root k (n*m+k*m))
    by (simp add: ring-distrib unity-root-diff unity-root-add unity-root-uminus)
  also have ... = cnj (unity-root k (n*m))
    using mult-period[of unity-root k k m] unity-periodic-arithmetic[of k]
    unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def by presburger
  also have ... = unity-root k (-n*m)
    by (simp add: unity-root-uminus)
  finally show unity-root k (-(n + k) * m) = unity-root k (-n*m)
    by simp
qed

lemma unity-div:
  fixes a :: int and d :: nat
  assumes d dvd k
  shows unity-root k (a*d) = unity-root (k div d) a
proof –

```

```

have 1: (2*pi*(a*d)/k) = (2*pi*a)/(k div d)
  using Suc-pred assms by (simp add: divide-simps, fastforce)
have unity-root k (a*d) = exp ((2*pi*(a*d)/k)* i)
  using unity-root-conv-exp by simp
also have ... = exp (((2*pi*a)/(k div d))* i)
  using 1 by simp
also have ... = unity-root (k div d) a
  using unity-root-conv-exp by simp
finally show ?thesis by simp
qed

```

```

lemma unity-div-num:
  assumes k > 0 d > 0 d dvd k
  shows unity-root k (x * (k div d)) = unity-root d x
  using assms dvd-div-mult-self unity-div by auto

```

4 Geometric sums of roots of unity

Apostol calls these ‘geometric sums’, which is a bit too generic. We therefore decided to refer to them as ‘sums of roots of unity’.

definition $\text{unity-root-sum } k \ n = (\sum m < k. \text{unity-root } k \ (n * \text{of-nat } m))$

```

lemma unity-root-sum-0-left [simp]: unity-root-sum 0 n = 0 and
  unity-root-sum-0-right [simp]: k > 0  $\implies$  unity-root-sum k 0 = k
  unfolding unity-root-sum-def by simp-all

```

Theorem 8.1

```

theorem unity-root-sum:
  fixes k :: nat and n :: int
  assumes gr: k ≥ 1
  shows k dvd n  $\implies$  unity-root-sum k n = k
    and  $\neg k \text{ dvd } n \implies$  unity-root-sum k n = 0

```

proof –

```

  assume dvd: k dvd n
  let ?x = unity-root k n
  have unit: ?x = 1 using dvd gr unity-root-eq-1-iff-int by auto
  have exp: ?x^m = unity-root k (n*m) for m using unity-root-pow by simp
  have unity-root-sum k n = (sum m < k. unity-root k (n*m))
    using unity-root-sum-def by simp
  also have ... = (sum m < k. ?x^m) using exp by auto
  also have ... = (sum m < k. 1) using unit by simp
  also have ... = k using gr by (induction k, auto)
  finally show unity-root-sum k n = k by simp
next
  assume dvd:  $\neg k \text{ dvd } n$ 
  let ?x = unity-root k n
  have ?x ≠ 1 using dvd gr unity-root-eq-1-iff-int by auto
  have (?x^k - 1)/(?x - 1) = (sum m < k. ?x^m)

```

```

    using geometric-sum[of ?x k, OF ‹?x ≠ 1›] by auto
  then have sum: unity-root-sum k n = (?xk - 1)/(?x - 1)
    using unity-root-sum-def unity-root-pow by simp
  have ?xk = 1
    using gr unity-root-eq-1-iff-int unity-root-pow by simp
  then show unity-root-sum k n = 0 using sum by auto
qed

```

corollary *unity-root-sum-periodic-arithmetic:*

```

periodic-arithmetic (unity-root-sum k) k
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix n
  show unity-root-sum k (n + k) = unity-root-sum k n
    by (cases k = 0; cases k dvd n) (auto simp add: unity-root-sum)
qed

```

lemma *unity-root-sum-nonzero-iff:*

```

fixes r :: int
assumes k ≥ 1 and r ∈ {−k<..<k}
shows unity-root-sum k r ≠ 0 ⟷ r = 0
proof
  assume unity-root-sum k r ≠ 0
  then have k dvd r using unity-root-sum assms by blast
  then show r = 0 using assms(2)
    using dvd-imp-le-int by force
next
  assume r = 0
  then have k dvd r by auto
  then have unity-root-sum k r = k
    using assms(1) unity-root-sum by blast
  then show unity-root-sum k r ≠ 0 using assms(1) by simp
qed

```

lemma *cyclotomic-poly-conv-prod-unity-root:*

```

fixes n :: nat
assumes n: n > 0
defines w ≡ (λk. unity-root n (int k))
shows Polynomial.monom 1 n - 1 = (∏ k<n. [:−w k, 1:]) (is ?lhs = ?rhs)
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume neq: ?lhs ≠ ?rhs
  have ?lhs = Polynomial.monom 1 n + (−1)
    by simp
  also have degree ... = n
    by (subst degree-add-eq-left) (use n in ‹auto simp: degree-monom-eq›)
  finally have deg1: degree ?lhs = n .

```

```

have poly.coeff (?lhs - ?rhs) n = 0

```

```

proof −

```

```

have poly.coeff ?rhs n = lead-coeff ?rhs
  by (simp add: degree-prod-sum-eq)
also have ... = 1
  by (subst lead-coeff-prod) auto
finally show ?thesis
  using n by simp
qed

moreover have ?lhs - ?rhs ≠ 0
  using neq by simp
ultimately have degree (?lhs - ?rhs) ≠ n
  by (metis leading-coeff-0-iff)
moreover have degree (?lhs - ?rhs) ≤ n
  by (rule degree-diff-le) (use deg1 in ⟨auto simp: degree-prod-sum-eq⟩)
ultimately have degree (?lhs - ?rhs) < n
  by linarith

have root1: poly ?lhs (w k) = 0 for k
  using ⟨n > 0⟩ by (simp add: w-def poly-monom unity-root-pow)
have root2: poly ?rhs (w k) = 0 if k < n for k
  using that by (auto simp: poly-prod)

have inj-on w {..

```



```

qed

show ?thesis
proof (rule poly-eqI-degree)
  have degree (1 - Polynomial.monom 1 n :: complex poly) ≤ n
    by (intro degree-diff-le) (auto simp: degree-monom-eq)
  thus degree (1 - Polynomial.monom 1 n :: complex poly) < card A
    by (simp add: card-A)
next
  have degree (∏ k<n. [:1, - w k:]) ≤ n
    by (rule order.trans[OF degree-prod-sum-le]) (auto simp: w-def)
  thus degree (∏ k<n. [:1, - w k:]) < card A
    by (simp add: card-A)
next
  fix x assume x: x ∈ A
  have poly (1 - Polynomial.monom 1 n) (w k) = 0 for k
    by (simp add: poly-monom w-def unity-root-pow)
  moreover have poly (1 - Polynomial.monom 1 n :: complex poly) 0 = 1
    using n by (simp add: poly-monom power-0-left)
  moreover have poly (∏ k<n. [:1, -w k:]) (w k) = 0 if k: k < n for k
  proof -
    define k' where k' = (if k = 0 then 0 else n - k)
    have w k * w k' = 1 k' < n using n k
      by (auto simp: k'-def w-def simp flip: unity-root-add intro!: unity-root-eq-1)
    thus ?thesis
      using that by (auto simp: poly-prod )
  qed
  moreover have poly (∏ k<n. [:1, -w k:]) 0 = 1
    by (simp add: poly-prod)
  ultimately show poly (1 - Polynomial.monom 1 n) x = poly (∏ k<n. [:1, -
w k:]) x
    using x by (auto simp: A-def)
  qed
qed
end

```

5 Finite Fourier series

```

theory Finite-Fourier-Series
imports
  Polynomial-Interpolation.Lagrange-Interpolation
  Complex-Roots-Of-Unity
begin

```

5.1 Auxiliary facts

```

lemma lagrange-exists:
  assumes d: distinct (map fst zs-ws)

```

```

defines e: ( $p :: \text{complex poly}$ )  $\equiv \text{lagrange-interpolation-poly } \text{zs-ws}$ 
shows  $\text{degree } p \leq (\text{length } \text{zs-ws}) - 1$ 
  ( $\forall x y. (x,y) \in \text{set } \text{zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly } p \ x = y$ )
proof -
  from e show  $\text{degree } p \leq (\text{length } \text{zs-ws} - 1)$ 
    using degree-lagrange-interpolation-poly by auto
  from e d have
     $\text{poly } p \ x = y$  if  $(x,y) \in \text{set } \text{zs-ws}$  for  $x \ y$ 
    using that lagrange-interpolation-poly by auto
  then show  $(\forall x y. (x,y) \in \text{set } \text{zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly } p \ x = y)$ 
    by auto
qed

lemma lagrange-unique:
  assumes o:  $\text{length } \text{zs-ws} > 0$ 
  assumes d: distinct ( $\text{map fst } \text{zs-ws}$ )
  assumes 1:  $\text{degree } (p1 :: \text{complex poly}) \leq (\text{length } \text{zs-ws}) - 1 \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall x y. (x,y) \in \text{set } \text{zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly } p1 \ x = y$ )
  assumes 2:  $\text{degree } (p2 :: \text{complex poly}) \leq (\text{length } \text{zs-ws}) - 1 \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall x y. (x,y) \in \text{set } \text{zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly } p2 \ x = y$ )
  shows  $p1 = p2$ 
proof (cases  $p1 - p2 = 0$ )
  case True then show ?thesis by simp
next
  case False
    have  $\text{poly } (p1 - p2) \ x = 0$  if  $x \in \text{set } (\text{map fst } \text{zs-ws})$  for  $x$ 
      using 1 2 that by (auto simp add: field-simps)
    from this d have 3:  $\text{card } \{x. \text{poly } (p1 - p2) \ x = 0\} \geq \text{length } \text{zs-ws}$ 
    proof (induction  $\text{zs-ws}$ )
      case Nil then show ?case by simp
    next
      case (Cons  $z\text{-}w \ \text{zs-ws}$ )
      from False poly-roots-finite
      have f: finite  $\{x. \text{poly } (p1 - p2) \ x = 0\}$  by blast
      from Cons have  $\text{set } (\text{map fst } (z\text{-}w \# \text{zs-ws})) \subseteq \{x. \text{poly } (p1 - p2) \ x = 0\}$ 
        by auto
      then have i:  $\text{card } (\text{set } (\text{map fst } (z\text{-}w \# \text{zs-ws}))) \leq \text{card } \{x. \text{poly } (p1 - p2) \ x = 0\}$ 
        using card-mono f by blast
      have  $\text{length } (z\text{-}w \# \text{zs-ws}) \leq \text{card } (\text{set } (\text{map fst } (z\text{-}w \# \text{zs-ws})))$ 
        using Cons.prems(2) distinct-card by fastforce
      from this i show ?case by simp
    qed
  from 1 2 have 4:  $\text{degree } (p1 - p2) \leq (\text{length } \text{zs-ws}) - 1$ 
    using degree-diff-le by blast

  have  $p1 - p2 = 0$ 
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume  $p1 - p2 \neq 0$ 

```

```

    then have card {x. poly (p1-p2) x = 0} ≤ degree (p1-p2)
    using poly-roots-degree by blast
    then have card {x. poly (p1-p2) x = 0} ≤ (length zs-ws)-1
    using 4 by auto
    then show False using 3 o by linarith
  qed
  then show ?thesis by simp
qed

```

Theorem 8.2

corollary *lagrange*:

```

  assumes length zs-ws > 0 distinct (map fst zs-ws)
  shows (∃! (p :: complex poly).
    degree p ≤ length zs-ws - 1 ∧
    (∀ x y. (x, y) ∈ set zs-ws ⟶ poly p x = y))
  using assms lagrange-exists lagrange-unique by blast

```

lemma *poly-altdef'*:

```

  assumes gr: k ≥ degree p
  shows poly p (z::complex) = (∑ i≤k. coeff p i * z ^ i)
proof -
  {fix z
  have 1: poly p z = (∑ i≤degree p. coeff p i * z ^ i)
    using poly-altdef[of p z] by simp
  have poly p z = (∑ i≤k. coeff p i * z ^ i)
    using gr
  proof (induction k)
    case 0 then show ?case by (simp add: poly-altdef)
  next
    case (Suc k)
    then show ?case
      using 1 le-degree not-less-eq-eq by fastforce
  qed}
  then show ?thesis using gr by blast
qed

```

5.2 Definition and uniqueness

definition *finite-fourier-poly* :: complex list \Rightarrow complex poly **where**

```

  finite-fourier-poly ws =
    (let k = length ws
    in poly-of-list [1 / k * (∑ m<k. ws ! m * unity-root k (-n*m)). n ← [0.. $k$ ]])

```

lemma *degree-poly-of-list-le*: degree (poly-of-list ws) ≤ length ws - 1
 by (intro degree-le) (auto simp: nth-default-def)

lemma *degree-finite-fourier-poly*: degree (finite-fourier-poly ws) ≤ length ws - 1
 unfolding finite-fourier-poly-def
 proof (subst Let-def)

```

let ?unrolled-list =
  (map (λn. complex-of-real (1 / real (length ws)) *
    (∑ m < length ws.
      ws ! m *
      unity-root (length ws) (- int n * int m)))
    [0..<length ws])
have degree (poly-of-list ?unrolled-list) ≤ length ?unrolled-list - 1
  by (rule degree-poly-of-list-le)
also have ... = length [0..<length ws] - 1
  using length-map by auto
also have ... = length ws - 1 by auto
finally show degree (poly-of-list ?unrolled-list) ≤ length ws - 1 by blast
qed

```

```

lemma coeff-finite-fourier-poly:
  assumes n < length ws
  defines k ≡ length ws
  shows coeff (finite-fourier-poly ws) n =
    (1/k) * (∑ m < k. ws ! m * unity-root k (-n*m))
  using assms degree-finite-fourier-poly
  by (auto simp: Let-def nth-default-def finite-fourier-poly-def)

```

```

lemma poly-finite-fourier-poly:
  fixes m :: int and ws
  defines k ≡ length ws
  assumes m ∈ {0..<k}
  assumes m < length ws
  shows poly (finite-fourier-poly ws) (unity-root k m) = ws ! (nat m)
proof -
  have k > 0 using assms by auto

```

```

have distr:
  (∑ j < length ws. ws ! j * unity-root k (-i*j)) * (unity-root k (m*i)) =
  (∑ j < length ws. ws ! j * unity-root k (-i*j) * (unity-root k (m*i)))
  for i
using sum-distrib-right[of λj. ws ! j * unity-root k (-i*j)
  {..<k} (unity-root k (m*i))]
using k-def by blast

```

```

{fix j i :: nat
  have unity-root k (-i*j) * (unity-root k (m*i)) = unity-root k (-i*j+m*i)
    by (simp add: unity-root-diff unity-root-uminus field-simps)
  also have ... = unity-root k (i*(m-j))
    by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  finally have unity-root k (-i*j) * (unity-root k (m*i)) = unity-root k (i*(m-j))
    by simp
  then have ws ! j * unity-root k (-i*j) * (unity-root k (m*i)) =
    ws ! j * unity-root k (i*(m-j))
    by auto

```

} **note** $prod = this$

have $zeros$:

$(unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j) \neq 0 \longleftrightarrow m = j)$

if $j \geq 0 \wedge j < k$ **for** j

using $k-def$ **that** $assms\ unity-root-sum-nonzero-iff[of\ -\ m-j]$ **by** $simp$

then have $sum-eq$:

$(\sum_{j \leq k-1}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j)) =$

$(\sum_{j \in \{nat\ m\}}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j))$

using $assms(2)$ **by** $(intro\ sum.mono-neutral-right, auto)$

have $poly\ (finite-fourier-poly\ ws)\ (unity-root\ k\ m) =$

$(\sum_{i < k-1}. coeff\ (finite-fourier-poly\ ws)\ i * (unity-root\ k\ m) ^ i)$

using $degree-finite-fourier-poly[of\ ws]\ k-def$

$poly-altdef'[of\ finite-fourier-poly\ ws\ k-1\ unity-root\ k\ m]$ **by** $blast$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{i < k}. coeff\ (finite-fourier-poly\ ws)\ i * (unity-root\ k\ m) ^ i)$

using $assms(2)$ **by** $(intro\ sum.cong)\ auto$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{i < k}. 1 / k *$

$(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (-i*j)) * (unity-root\ k\ m) ^ i)$

using $coeff-finite-fourier-poly[of\ -\ ws]\ k-def$ **by** $auto$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{i < k}. 1 / k *$

$(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (-i*j)) * (unity-root\ k\ (m*i)))$

using $unity-root-pow$ **by** $auto$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{i < k}. 1 / k *$

$(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (-i*j) * (unity-root\ k\ (m*i))))$

using $distr\ k-def$ **by** $simp$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{i < k}. 1 / k *$

$(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (i*(m-j))))$

using $prod$ **by** $presburger$

also have $\dots = 1 / k * (\sum_{i < k}.$

$(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (i*(m-j))))$

by $(simp\ add: sum-distrib-left)$

also have $\dots = 1 / k * (\sum_{j < k}.$

$(\sum_{i < k}. ws ! j * unity-root\ k\ (i*(m-j))))$

using $sum.swap$ **by** $fastforce$

also have $\dots = 1 / k * (\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * (\sum_{i < k}. unity-root\ k\ (i*(m-j))))$

by $(simp\ add: vector-space-over-itself.scale-sum-right)$

also have $\dots = 1 / k * (\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j))$

unfolding $unity-root-sum-def$ **by** $(simp\ add: algebra-simps)$

also have $(\sum_{j < k}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j)) = (\sum_{j \leq k-1}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j))$

using $\langle k > 0 \rangle$ **by** $(intro\ sum.cong)\ auto$

also have $\dots = (\sum_{j \in \{nat\ m\}}. ws ! j * unity-root-sum\ k\ (m-j))$

using $sum-eq$.

also have $\dots = ws ! (nat\ m) * k$

using $assms(2)$ **by** $(auto\ simp: algebra-simps)$

finally have $poly\ (finite-fourier-poly\ ws)\ (unity-root\ k\ m) = ws ! (nat\ m)$

using $assms(2)$ **by** $auto$

then show $?thesis$ **by** $simp$

qed

Theorem 8.3

theorem *finite-fourier-poly-unique*:

assumes *length ws > 0*

defines $k \equiv \text{length } ws$

assumes $(\text{degree } p \leq k - 1)$

assumes $(\forall m \leq k-1. (ws ! m) = \text{poly } p (\text{unity-root } k m))$

shows $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly } ws$

proof –

let $?z = \text{map } (\lambda m. \text{unity-root } k m) [0..<k]$

have $k: k > 0$ **using** *assms* **by** *auto*

from k **have** $d1: \text{distinct } ?z$

unfolding *distinct-conv-nth* **using** *unity-root-eqD[OF k]* **by** *force*

let $?zs-ws = \text{zip } ?z \text{ } ws$

from $d1$ $k\text{-def}$ **have** $d2: \text{distinct } (\text{map } \text{fst } ?zs-ws)$ **by** *simp*

have $l2: \text{length } ?zs-ws > 0$ **using** *assms(1)* $k\text{-def}$ **by** *auto*

have $l3: \text{length } ?zs-ws = k$ **by** (*simp add: k-def*)

from *degree-finite-fourier-poly* **have** $\text{degree: degree } (\text{finite-fourier-poly } ws) \leq k - 1$

using $k\text{-def}$ **by** *simp*

have *interp*: $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly } ws) x = y$

if $(x, y) \in \text{set } ?zs-ws$ **for** $x \ y$

proof –

from *that* **obtain** n **where**

$x = \text{map } (\text{unity-root } k \circ \text{int}) [0..<k] ! n \wedge$

$y = ws ! n \wedge$

$n < \text{length } ws$

using *in-set-zip[of (x,y) (map (unity-root k) (map int [0..<k])) ws]*

by *auto*

then **have**

$x = \text{unity-root } k (\text{int } n) \wedge$

$y = ws ! n \wedge$

$n < \text{length } ws$

using *nth-map[of n [0..<k] unity-root k o int] k-def* **by** *simp*

thus $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly } ws) x = y$

by (*simp add: poly-finite-fourier-poly k-def*)

qed

have *interp-p*: $\text{poly } p x = y$ **if** $(x,y) \in \text{set } ?zs-ws$ **for** $x \ y$

proof –

from *that* **obtain** n **where**

$x = \text{map } (\text{unity-root } k \circ \text{int}) [0..<k] ! n \wedge$

$y = ws ! n \wedge$

$n < \text{length } ws$

using *in-set-zip[of (x,y) (map (unity-root k) (map int [0..<k])) ws]*

by *auto*

```

then have rw:  $x = \text{unity-root } k \text{ (int } n) \ y = \text{ws ! } n \ n < \text{length ws}$ 
using nth-map[of  $n \ [0..<k]$   $\text{unity-root } k \circ \text{int}$  ]  $k\text{-def}$  by simp+
show poly  $p \ x = y$ 
unfolding rw(1,2) using assms(4) rw(3)  $k\text{-def}$  by simp
qed

```

```

from lagrange-unique[of -  $p$  finite-fourier-poly ws] d2 l2
have l:
  degree  $p \leq k - 1 \wedge$ 
   $(\forall x \ y. (x, y) \in \text{set ?zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly } p \ x = y) \implies$ 
  degree (finite-fourier-poly ws)  $\leq k - 1 \wedge$ 
   $(\forall x \ y. (x, y) \in \text{set ?zs-ws} \longrightarrow \text{poly (finite-fourier-poly ws)} \ x = y) \implies$ 
   $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly ws}$ 
using l3 by metis
from assms degree interp interp-p l3
show  $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly ws}$  using l by blast
qed

```

The following alternative formulation returns a coefficient

definition $\text{finite-fourier-poly}' :: (\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}) \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ **poly where**
 $\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k =$
 $(\text{poly-of-list } [1 / k * (\sum m < k. (\text{ws } m) * \text{unity-root } k \ (-n*m))]. \ n \leftarrow [0..<k])$

lemma $\text{finite-fourier-poly}'\text{-conv-finite-fourier-poly}$:
 $\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k = \text{finite-fourier-poly } [\text{ws } n. \ n \leftarrow [0..<k]]$
unfolding $\text{finite-fourier-poly-def}$ $\text{finite-fourier-poly}'\text{-def}$ **by** simp

lemma $\text{coeff-finite-fourier-poly}'$:
assumes $n < k$
shows $\text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k) \ n =$
 $(1/k) * (\sum m < k. (\text{ws } m) * \text{unity-root } k \ (-n*m))$
proof –
let $?ws = [\text{ws } n. \ n \leftarrow [0..<k]]$
have $\text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k) \ n =$
 $\text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly } ?ws) \ n$
by (simp add: $\text{finite-fourier-poly}'\text{-conv-finite-fourier-poly}$)
also have $\text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly } ?ws) \ n =$
 $1 / k * (\sum m < k. (?ws ! m) * \text{unity-root } k \ (-n*m))$
using assms **by** (auto simp: $\text{coeff-finite-fourier-poly}$)
also have $\dots = (1/k) * (\sum m < k. (\text{ws } m) * \text{unity-root } k \ (-n*m))$
using assms **by** simp
finally show $?thesis$ **by** simp
qed

lemma $\text{degree-finite-fourier-poly}'$: $\text{degree } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k) \leq k - 1$
using $\text{degree-finite-fourier-poly}$ [of $[\text{ws } n. \ n \leftarrow [0..<k]]$]
by (auto simp: $\text{finite-fourier-poly}'\text{-conv-finite-fourier-poly}$)

lemma $\text{poly-finite-fourier-poly}'$:

```

fixes  $m :: \text{int}$  and  $k$ 
assumes  $m \in \{0..<k\}$ 
shows  $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k) (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m) = \text{ws } (\text{nat } m)$ 
using  $\text{assms poly-finite-fourier-poly}[of \text{ } m \text{ } [ws \text{ } n. \text{ } n \leftarrow [0..<k]]]$ 
by ( $\text{auto simp: finite-fourier-poly}'\text{-conv-finite-fourier-poly poly-finite-fourier-poly}$ )

lemma finite-fourier-poly'-unique:
  assumes  $k > 0$ 
  assumes  $\text{degree } p \leq k - 1$ 
  assumes  $\forall m \leq k-1. \text{ws } m = \text{poly } p (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m)$ 
  shows  $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k$ 
proof -
  let  $?ws = [ws \text{ } n. \text{ } n \leftarrow [0..<k]]$ 
  from finite-fourier-poly'-unique have  $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly } ?ws$  using  $\text{assms}$  by
simp
  also have  $\dots = \text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k$ 
  using finite-fourier-poly'-conv-finite-fourier-poly ..
  finally show  $p = \text{finite-fourier-poly}' \text{ ws } k$  by blast
qed

lemma fourier-unity-root:
  fixes  $k :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes  $k > 0$ 
  shows  $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m) =$ 
 $(\sum n < k. 1/k * (\sum m < k. (f \text{ } m) * \text{unity-root } k \text{ } (-n * m)) * \text{unity-root } k \text{ } (m * n))$ 
proof -
  have  $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m) =$ 
 $(\sum n \leq k-1. \text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) \text{ } n * (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m)^{\wedge} n)$ 
  using  $\text{poly-altdef}'[of \text{ } \text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k \text{ } k-1 \text{ } \text{unity-root } k \text{ } m]$ 
 $\text{degree-finite-fourier-poly}'[of \text{ } f k]$  by simp
  also have  $\dots = (\sum n \leq k-1. \text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) \text{ } n * (\text{unity-root } k$ 
 $(m * n)))$ 
  using unity-root-pow by simp
  also have  $\dots = (\sum n < k. \text{coeff } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) \text{ } n * (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } (m * n)))$ 
  using  $\text{assms}$  by (intro sum.cong) auto
  also have  $\dots = (\sum n < k. (1/k) * (\sum m < k. (f \text{ } m) * \text{unity-root } k \text{ } (-n * m)) * (\text{unity-root}$ 
 $k \text{ } (m * n)))$ 
  using  $\text{coeff-finite-fourier-poly}'[of \text{ } - \text{ } k \text{ } f]$  by simp
  finally show
 $\text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}' f k) (\text{unity-root } k \text{ } m) =$ 
 $(\sum n < k. 1/k * (\sum m < k. (f \text{ } m) * \text{unity-root } k \text{ } (-n * m)) * \text{unity-root } k \text{ } (m * n))$ 
by blast
qed

```

5.3 Expansion of an arithmetical function

Theorem 8.4

theorem *fourier-expansion-periodic-arithmetic*:


```

assumes  $k > 0$ 
assumes periodic-arithmetic  $f\ k$ 
defines  $g \equiv (\lambda n. (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f\ m * \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * m)))$ 
  shows periodic-arithmetic  $g\ k$ 
  and  $f\ m = (\sum n < k. g\ n * \text{unity-root } k\ (m * n))$ 
proof -
{fix  $l$ 
  from unity-periodic-arithmetic mult-period
  have period: periodic-arithmetic  $(\lambda x. \text{unity-root } k\ x)\ (k * l)$  by simp}
note period = this
{fix  $n\ l$ 
  have  $\text{unity-root } k\ (-(n+k)*l) = \text{cnj } (\text{unity-root } k\ ((n+k)*l))$ 
    by (simp add: unity-root-uminus unity-root-diff ring-distrib unity-root-add)
  also have  $\text{unity-root } k\ ((n+k)*l) = \text{unity-root } k\ (n * l)$ 
    by (intro unity-root-cong) (auto simp: cong-def algebra-simps)
  also have  $\text{cnj } \dots = \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * l)$ 
    using unity-root-uminus by simp
  finally have  $\text{unity-root } k\ (-(n+k)*l) = \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * l)$  by simp}
note u-period = this

show 1: periodic-arithmetic  $g\ k$ 
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
proof
  fix  $n$ 

  have  $g(n+k) = (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k\ (-(n+k)*m))$ 
    using assms(3) by fastforce
  also have  $\dots = (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * m))$ 
    proof -
    have  $(\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k\ (-(n+k)*m)) =$ 
       $(\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * m))$ 
      by (intro sum.cong) (use u-period in auto)
    then show ?thesis by argo
  qed
  also have  $\dots = g(n)$ 
    using assms(3) by fastforce
  finally show  $g(n+k) = g(n)$  by simp
qed

show  $f(m) = (\sum n < k. g(n) * \text{unity-root } k\ (m * \text{int } n))$ 
proof -
{
  fix  $m$ 
  assume range:  $m \in \{0..<k\}$ 
  have  $f(m) = (\sum n < k. g(n) * \text{unity-root } k\ (m * \text{int } n))$ 
    proof -
    have  $f\ m = \text{poly } (\text{finite-fourier-poly}'\ f\ k)\ (\text{unity-root } k\ m)$ 
      using range by (simp add: poly-finite-fourier-poly')
    also have  $\dots = (\sum n < k. (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k\ (-n * m))) *$ 

```

```

unity-root k (m*n))
  using fourier-unity-root assms(1) by blast
  also have ... = (∑ n<k. g(n)* unity-root k (m*n))
    using assms by simp
  finally show ?thesis by auto
qed}
note concentrated = this

have periodic-arithmetic (λm. (∑ n<k. g(n)* unity-root k (m * int n))) k
proof -
  have periodic-arithmetic (λn. g(n)* unity-root k (i * int n)) k for i :: int
    using 1 unity-periodic-arithmetic mult-periodic-arithmetic
      unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult by auto
  then have p-s: ∀ i<k. periodic-arithmetic (λn. g(n)* unity-root k (i * int n)) k
    by simp
  have periodic-arithmetic (λi. ∑ n<k. g(n)* unity-root k (i * int n)) k
    unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def
  proof
    fix n
    show (∑ na<k. g na * unity-root k (int (n + k) * int na)) =
      (∑ na<k. g na * unity-root k (int n * int na))
      by (intro sum.cong refl, simp add: distrib-right flip: of-nat-mult of-nat-add)
      (insert period, unfold periodic-arithmetic-def, blast)
  qed
  then show ?thesis by simp
qed

from this assms(1-2) concentrated
  unique-periodic-arithmetic-extension[of k f (λi. ∑ n<k. g(n)* unity-root k (i
* int n)) m]
  show f m = (∑ n<k. g n * unity-root k (int m * int n)) by simp
qed
qed

theorem fourier-expansion-periodic-arithmetic-unique:
  fixes f g :: nat ⇒ complex
  assumes k > 0
  assumes periodic-arithmetic f k and periodic-arithmetic g k
  assumes ∧m. m < k ⇒ f m = (∑ n<k. g n * unity-root k (int (m * n)))
  shows g n = (1 / k) * (∑ m<k. f m * unity-root k (-n * m))
proof -
  let ?p = poly-of-list [g(n). n ← [0..<k]]
  have d: degree ?p ≤ k-1
  proof -
    have degree ?p ≤ length [g(n). n ← [0..<k]] - 1
      using degree-poly-of-list-le by blast
    also have ... = length [0..<k] - 1
      using length-map by auto
    finally show ?thesis by simp

```

```

qed
have c: coeff ?p i = (if i < k then g(i) else 0) for i
  by (simp add: nth-default-def)
{fix z
have poly ?p z = (∑ n≤k-1. coeff ?p n * z^n)
  using poly-altdef'[of ?p k-1] d by blast
also have ... = (∑ n<k. coeff ?p n * z^n)
  using ⟨k > 0⟩ by (intro sum.cong) auto
also have ... = (∑ n<k. (if n < k then g(n) else 0) * z^n)
  using c by simp
also have ... = (∑ n<k. g(n) * z^n)
  by (simp split: if-splits)
finally have poly ?p z = (∑ n<k. g n * z^n) .}
note eval = this
{fix i
have poly ?p (unity-root k i) = (∑ n<k. g(n) * (unity-root k i)^n)
  using eval by blast
then have poly ?p (unity-root k i) = (∑ n<k. g(n) * (unity-root k (i*n)))
  using unity-root-pow by auto}
note interpolation = this

{
  fix m
  assume b: m ≤ k-1
  from d assms(1)
  have f m = (∑ n<k. g(n) * unity-root k (m*n))
    using assms(4) b by auto
  also have ... = poly ?p (unity-root k m)
    using interpolation by simp
  finally have f m = poly ?p (unity-root k m) by auto
}

from this finite-fourier-poly'-unique[of k - f]
have p-is-fourier: ?p = finite-fourier-poly' f k
  using assms(1) d by blast

{
  fix n
  assume b: n ≤ k-1
  have f-1: coeff ?p n = (1 / k) * (∑ m<k. f(m) * unity-root k (-n*m))
    using p-is-fourier using assms(1) b by (auto simp: coeff-finite-fourier-poly')
  then have g(n) = (1 / k) * (∑ m<k. f(m) * unity-root k (-n*m))
    using c b assms(1)
  proof -
    have 1: coeff ?p n = (1 / k) * (∑ m<k. f(m) * unity-root k (-n*m))
      using f-1 by blast
    have 2: coeff ?p n = g n
      using c assms(1) b by simp
    show ?thesis using 1 2 by argo
  }
}

```

```

    qed
  }

  have periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda n. (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k (-n * m))$ )
  k
  proof -
    have periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda i. \text{unity-root } k (-\text{int } i * \text{int } m)$ ) k for m
    using unity-root-periodic-arithmetic-mult-minus by simp
    then have periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda i. f(m) * \text{unity-root } k (-i * m)$ ) k for m
    by (simp add: periodic-arithmetic-def)
    then show periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda i. (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f m * \text{unity-root } k (-i * m))$ ) k
    by (intro scalar-mult-periodic-arithmetic fin-sum-periodic-arithmetic-set) auto
  qed
  note periodich = this
  let ?h = ( $\lambda i. (1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f m * \text{unity-root } k (-i * m))$ )
  from unique-periodic-arithmetic-extension[of k g ?h n]
  assms(3) assms(1) periodich
  have g n =  $(1 / k) * (\sum m < k. f m * \text{unity-root } k (-n * m))$ 
  by (simp add:  $\langle \bigwedge na. na \leq k - 1 \implies g na = \text{complex-of-real } (1 / \text{real } k) * (\sum m < k. f m * \text{unity-root } k (-\text{int } na * \text{int } m)) \rangle$ )
  then show ?thesis by simp
qed

end

```

6 Ramanujan sums

```

theory Ramanujan-Sums
imports
  Dirichlet-Series.Moebius-Mu
  Gauss-Sums-Auxiliary
  Finite-Fourier-Series
begin

```

6.1 Basic sums

```

definition ramanujan-sum :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex
  where ramanujan-sum k n =  $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m k. \text{unity-root } k (m * n))$ 

```

```

notation ramanujan-sum ( $\langle c \rangle$ )

```

```

lemma ramanujan-sum-0-n [simp]: c 0 n = 0
  unfolding ramanujan-sum-def by simp

```

```

lemma sum-coprime-conv-dirichlet-prod-moebius-mu:
  fixes F S :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex and f :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex

```

```

defines  $F \equiv (\lambda n. (\sum k \in \{1..n\}. f\ k\ n))$ 
defines  $S \equiv (\lambda n. (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k\ n . f\ k\ n))$ 
assumes  $\bigwedge a\ b\ d. d\ \text{dvd}\ a \implies d\ \text{dvd}\ b \implies f\ (a\ \text{div}\ d)\ (b\ \text{div}\ d) = f\ a\ b$ 
shows  $S\ n = \text{dirichlet-prod moebius-mu } F\ n$ 
proof (cases  $n = 0$ )
  case True
    then show ?thesis
      using assms(2) unfolding dirichlet-prod-def by fastforce
  next
    case False
      have  $S(n) = (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k\ n . (f\ k\ n))$ 
        using assms by blast
      also have  $\dots = (\sum k \in \{1..n\}. (f\ k\ n) * \text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k\ n))$ 
        using dirichlet-prod-neutral-intro by blast
      also have  $\dots = (\sum k \in \{1..n\}. (f\ k\ n) * (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ (\text{gcd } k\ n). \text{moebius-mu } d))$ 
      proof –
        {
          fix  $k$ 
          have  $\text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k\ n) = (\text{if } \text{gcd } k\ n = 1 \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0)$ 
            using dirichlet-prod-neutral-def[of gcd k n] by blast
          also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd } k\ n. \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 
            using sum-moebius-mu-divisors'[of gcd k n] by auto
          finally have  $\text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } (\text{gcd } k\ n) = (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd } k\ n. \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 
            by auto
        }
      } note summand = this
      then show ?thesis by (simp add: summand)
    qed
    also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..n. (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd } k\ n. (f\ k\ n) * \text{moebius-mu } d))$ 
      by (simp add: sum-distrib-left)
    also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..n. (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ \text{gcd } n\ k. (f\ k\ n) * \text{moebius-mu } d))$ 
      using gcd.commute[of - n] by simp
    also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ n. \sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge d\ \text{dvd}\ k. (f\ k\ n) * \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 
      using sum.swap-restrict[of {1..n} {d. d dvd n}  $\lambda k\ d. (f\ k\ n) * \text{moebius-mu } d\ \lambda k\ d. d\ \text{dvd}\ k$ ] False by auto
    also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ n. \text{moebius-mu } d * (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge d\ \text{dvd}\ k. (f\ k\ n)))$ 
      by (simp add: sum-distrib-left mult.commute)
    also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d\ \text{dvd}\ n. \text{moebius-mu } d * (\sum q \in \{1..n\ \text{div}\ d\}. (f\ q\ (n\ \text{div}\ d))))$ 
      proof –
        have st:
           $(\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge d\ \text{dvd}\ k. (f\ k\ n)) =$ 
           $(\sum q \in \{1..n\ \text{div}\ d\}. (f\ q\ (n\ \text{div}\ d)))$ 
          if  $d\ \text{dvd}\ n$  for  $d :: \text{nat}$ 
          by (rule sum.reindex-bij-witness[of -  $\lambda k. k * d\ \lambda k. k\ \text{div}\ d$ ])
          (use assms(3) that in <fastforce simp: div-le-mono>)+
        show ?thesis

```

```

    by (intro sum.cong) (use st False in fastforce)+
  qed
  also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } n. \text{moebius-mu } d * F(n \text{ div } d)$ )
  proof -
    have  $F(n \text{ div } d) = (\sum q \in \{1..n \text{ div } d\}. (f \ q \ (n \text{ div } d)))$ 
    if  $d \text{ dvd } n$  for  $d$ 
    by (simp add: F-def real-of-nat-div that)
    then show ?thesis by auto
  qed
  also have ... = dirichlet-prod moebius-mu F n
  by (simp add: dirichlet-prod-def)
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed

```

lemma *dirichlet-prod-neutral-sum*:

```

  dirichlet-prod-neutral n = ( $\sum k = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ ) for  $n :: \text{nat}$ 
  proof (cases n = 0)
    case True then show ?thesis unfolding dirichlet-prod-neutral-def by simp
  next
    case False
    have 1:  $\text{unity-root } n \ 0 = 1$  by simp
    have 2:  $\text{unity-root } n \ n = 1$ 
    using unity-periodic-arithmetic[of n] add.left-neutral
  proof -
    have 1 =  $\text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } 0)$ 
    using 1 by auto
    also have  $\text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } 0) = \text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } (0 + n))$ 
    using unity-periodic-arithmetic[of n] periodic-arithmetic-def by algebra
    also have ... =  $\text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } n)$  by simp
    finally show ?thesis by auto
  qed
  have ( $\sum k = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ ) = ( $\sum k = 0..n. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ ) - 1
  by (simp add: sum.atLeast-Suc-atMost sum.atLeast0-atMost-Suc-shift 1)
  also have ... = (( $\sum k = 0..n-1. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ )+1) - 1
  using sum.atLeast0-atMost-Suc[of ( $\lambda k. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ ) n-1] False
  by (simp add: 2)
  also have ... = ( $\sum k = 0..n-1. \text{unity-root } n \ k$ )
  by simp
  also have ... =  $\text{unity-root-sum } n \ 1$ 
  unfolding unity-root-sum-def using  $\langle n \neq 0 \rangle$  by (intro sum.cong) auto
  also have ... = dirichlet-prod-neutral n
  using unity-root-sum[of n 1] False
  by (cases n = 1, auto simp add: False dirichlet-prod-neutral-def)
  finally have 3:  $\text{dirichlet-prod-neutral } n = (\sum k = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \ k)$  by auto
  then show ?thesis by blast
qed

```

lemma *moebius-coprime-sum*:

```

  moebius-mu n = ( $\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n. \text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } k)$ )

```

proof –
let $?f = (\lambda k \ n. \text{unity-root } n \ k)$
from *div-dvd-div* **have**
 $d \text{ dvd } a \implies d \text{ dvd } b \implies$
 $\text{unity-root } (a \text{ div } d) \ (b \text{ div } d) =$
 $\text{unity-root } a \ b \text{ for } a \ b \ d :: \text{nat}$
using *unity-root-def real-of-nat-div* **by** *fastforce*
then have $(\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n. \ ?f \ k \ n) =$
 $\text{dirichlet-prod moebius-mu } (\lambda n. \sum k = 1..n. \ ?f \ k \ n) \ n$
using *sum-coprime-conv-dirichlet-prod-moebius-mu*[*of ?f n*] **by** *blast*
also have $\dots = \text{dirichlet-prod moebius-mu dirichlet-prod-neutral } n$
by (*simp add: dirichlet-prod-neutral-sum*)
also have $\dots = \text{moebius-mu } n$
by (*cases n = 0*) (*simp-all add: dirichlet-prod-neutral-right-neutral*)
finally have $\text{moebius-mu } n = (\sum k \mid k \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } k \ n. \ ?f \ k \ n)$
by *argo*
then show *?thesis* **by** *blast*
qed

corollary *ramanujan-sum-1-right* [*simp*]: $c \ k \ (\text{Suc } 0) = \text{moebius-mu } k$
unfolding *ramanujan-sum-def* **using** *moebius-coprime-sum*[*of k*] **by** *simp*

lemma *ramanujan-sum-dvd-eq-totient*:

assumes $k \text{ dvd } n$
shows $c \ k \ n = \text{totient } k$
unfolding *ramanujan-sum-def*

proof –
have $\text{unity-root } k \ (m * n) = 1 \text{ for } m$
using *assms* **by** (*cases k = 0*) (*auto simp: unity-root-eq-1-iff-int*)
then have $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \ \text{unity-root } k \ (m * n)) =$
 $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \ 1) \text{ by } \text{simp}$
also have $\dots = \text{card } \{m. m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k\} \text{ by } \text{simp}$
also have $\dots = \text{totient } k$
unfolding *totient-def totatives-def*
proof –
have $\{1..k\} = \{0 <..k\} \text{ by } \text{auto}$
then show $\text{of-nat } (\text{card } \{m \in \{1..k\}. \ \text{coprime } m \ k\}) =$
 $\text{of-nat } (\text{card } \{ka \in \{0 <..k\}. \ \text{coprime } ka \ k\}) \text{ by } \text{auto}$
qed
finally show $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \ \text{unity-root } k \ (m * n)) = \text{totient } k$
by *auto*
qed

6.2 Generalised sums

definition *gen-ramanujan-sum* :: $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}) \Rightarrow (\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}) \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ **where**

$\text{gen-ramanujan-sum } f \ g = (\lambda k \ n. \sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \text{gcd } n \ k. \ f \ d * g \ (k \text{ div } d))$

notation *gen-ramanujan-sum* ($\langle s \rangle$)

lemma *gen-ramanujan-sum-k-1*: $s f g k 1 = f 1 * g k$
unfolding *gen-ramanujan-sum-def* **by** *auto*

lemma *gen-ramanujan-sum-1-n*: $s f g 1 n = f 1 * g 1$
unfolding *gen-ramanujan-sum-def* **by** *simp*

lemma *gen-ramanujan-sum-periodic*: *periodic-arithmetic* ($s f g k$) k
unfolding *gen-ramanujan-sum-def* *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** *simp*

Theorem 8.5

theorem *gen-ramanujan-sum-fourier-expansion*:

fixes $f g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$ **and** $a :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$

assumes $k > 0$

defines $a \equiv (\lambda k m. (1/k) * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } (\text{gcd } m k). g d * f (k \text{ div } d) * d))$

shows $s f g k n = (\sum m \leq k-1. a k m * \text{unity-root } k (m*n))$

proof –

let $?g = (\lambda x. 1 / \text{of-nat } k * (\sum m < k. s f g k m * \text{unity-root } k (-x*m)))$

{fix $m :: \text{nat}$

let $?h = \lambda n d. f d * g (k \text{ div } d) * \text{unity-root } k (-m * \text{int } n)$

have $(\sum l < k. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l)) =$

$(\sum l \in \{0..k-1\}. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l))$

using $\langle k > 0 \rangle$ **by** (*intro sum.cong*) *auto*

also have $\dots = (\sum l \in \{1..k\}. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l))$

proof –

have *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda l. \text{unity-root } k (-m*l)) k$

using *unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult* **by** *blast*

then have *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda l. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l)) k$

using *gen-ramanujan-sum-periodic* *mult-periodic-arithmetic* **by** *blast*

from *this* *periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift*[*of - k 1*]

have $\text{sum } (\lambda l. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l)) \{0..k-1\} =$

$\text{sum } (\lambda l. s f g k l * \text{unity-root } k (-m*l)) \{1..k\}$

using *assms(1)* *zero-less-one* **by** *simp*

then show *?thesis* **by** *argo*

qed

also have $\dots = (\sum n \in \{1..k\}. (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } (\text{gcd } n k). f(d) * g(k \text{ div } d)) * \text{unity-root } k (-m*n))$

by (*simp add: gen-ramanujan-sum-def*)

also have $\dots = (\sum n \in \{1..k\}. (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } (\text{gcd } n k). f(d) * g(k \text{ div } d) * \text{unity-root } k (-m*n)))$

by (*simp add: sum-distrib-right*)

also have $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. \sum n \mid n \in \{1..k\} \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. ?h n d)$

proof –

have $(\sum n = 1..k. \sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \text{gcd } n k. ?h n d) =$

$(\sum n = 1..k. \sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. ?h n d)$

using *gcd.commute*[*of - k*] **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. \sum n \mid n \in \{1..k\} \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. ?h n d)$


```

    using sum.swap-restrict[of {1..k} {d. d dvd k}
      -  $\lambda n d. d \text{ dvd } n$ ] assms by fastforce

  finally have
    ( $\sum n = 1..k. \sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd n k. ?h n d$ ) =
    ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. \sum n \mid n \in \{1..k\} \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. ?h n d$ ) by blast
  then show ?thesis by simp
qed
also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)*$ 
  ( $\sum n \mid n \in \{1..k\} \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. \text{unity-root } k (- m * \text{int } n)$ ))
  by (simp add: sum-distrib-left)
also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)*$ 
  ( $\sum e \in \{1..k \text{ div } d\}. \text{unity-root } k (- m * (e*d))$ ))
  using assms(1) sum-div-reduce div-greater-zero-iff dvd-div-gt0 by auto
also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)*$ 
  ( $\sum e \in \{1..k \text{ div } d\}. \text{unity-root } (k \text{ div } d) (- m * e)$ ))
proof -
{
  fix d e
  assume d dvd k
  hence  $2 * \pi * \text{real-of-int } (- \text{int } m * \text{int } (e * d)) / \text{real } k =$ 
     $2 * \pi * \text{real-of-int } (- \text{int } m * \text{int } e) / \text{real } (k \text{ div } d)$  by auto
  hence  $\text{unity-root } k (- m * (e * d)) = \text{unity-root } (k \text{ div } d) (- m * e)$ 
    unfolding unity-root-def by simp
}
then show ?thesis by simp
qed
also have ... = dirichlet-prod ( $\lambda d. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)$ )
  ( $\lambda d. (\sum e \in \{1..d\}. \text{unity-root } d (- m * e))$ ) k
  unfolding dirichlet-prod-def by blast
also have ... = dirichlet-prod ( $\lambda d. (\sum e \in \{1..d\}. \text{unity-root } d (- m * e))$ )
  ( $\lambda d. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)$ ) k
  using dirichlet-prod-commutes[of
    ( $\lambda d. f(d)*g(k \text{ div } d)$ )
    ( $\lambda d. (\sum e \in \{1..d\}. \text{unity-root } d (- m * e))$ )] by argo
also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. (\sum e \in \{1..(d::\text{nat})\}. \text{unity-root } d (- m * e))*$ 
  ( $f(k \text{ div } d)*g(k \text{ div } (k \text{ div } d))$ ))
  unfolding dirichlet-prod-def by blast
also have ... = ( $\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } k. (\sum e \in \{1..(d::\text{nat})\}. \text{unity-root } d (- m * e))*$ 
  ( $f(k \text{ div } d)*g(d)$ ))
proof -
{
  fix d :: nat
  assume d dvd k
  then have  $k \text{ div } (k \text{ div } d) = d$ 
    by (simp add: assms(1) div-div-eq-right)
}
then show ?thesis by simp
qed

```

```

also have ... = (∑ (d::nat) | d dvd k ∧ d dvd m. d*(f(k div d)*g(d)))
proof -
{
  fix d
  assume d dvd k
  with assms have d > 0 by (intro Nat.gr0I) auto
  have periodic-arithmetic (λx. unity-root d (- m * int x)) d
    using unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult by blast
  then have (∑ e ∈ {1..d}. unity-root d (- m * e)) =
    (∑ e ∈ {0..d-1}. unity-root d (- m * e))
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[of λe. unity-root d
(- m * e) d 1] assms ⟨d dvd k⟩
    by fastforce
  also have ... = unity-root-sum d (-m)
    unfolding unity-root-sum-def using ⟨d > 0⟩ by (intro sum.cong) auto
  finally have
    (∑ e ∈ {1..d}. unity-root d (- m * e)) = unity-root-sum d (-m)
    by argo
}
then have
  (∑ d | d dvd k. (∑ e = 1..d. unity-root d (- m * int e)) * (f (k div d) * g
d)) =
  (∑ d | d dvd k. unity-root-sum d (-m) * (f (k div d) * g d)) by simp
also have ... = (∑ d | d dvd k ∧ d dvd m. unity-root-sum d (-m) * (f (k div
d) * g d))
proof (intro sum.mono-neutral-right,simp add: ⟨k > 0⟩,blast,standard)
  fix i
  assume as: i ∈ {d. d dvd k} - {d. d dvd k ∧ d dvd m}
  then have i ≥ 1 using ⟨k > 0⟩ by auto
  have k ≥ 1 using ⟨k > 0⟩ by auto
  have ¬ i dvd (-m) using as by auto
  thus unity-root-sum i (- int m) * (f (k div i) * g i) = 0
    using ⟨i ≥ 1⟩ by (subst unity-root-sum(2)) auto
qed
also have ... = (∑ d | d dvd k ∧ d dvd m. d * (f (k div d) * g d))
proof -
{fix d :: nat
  assume 1: d dvd m
  assume 2: d dvd k
  then have unity-root-sum d (-m) = d
    using unity-root-sum[of d (-m)] assms(1) 1 2
    by auto}
  then show ?thesis by auto
qed
finally show ?thesis by argo
qed
also have ... = (∑ d | d dvd gcd m k. of-nat d * (f (k div d) * g d))
  by (simp add: gcd.commute)
also have ... = (∑ d | d dvd gcd m k. g d * f (k div d) * d)

```

```

    by (simp add: algebra-simps sum-distrib-left)
  also have  $1 / k * \dots = a \ k \ m$  using a-def by auto
  finally have  $?g \ m = a \ k \ m$  by simp}
  note a-eq-g = this
  {
    fix m
    from fourier-expansion-periodic-arithmetic(2)[of k s f g k] gen-ramanujan-sum-periodic
    assms(1)
    have  $s \ f \ g \ k \ m = (\sum_{n < k}. ?g \ n * \text{unity-root } k \ (int \ m * n))$ 
      by blast
    also have  $\dots = (\sum_{n < k}. a \ k \ n * \text{unity-root } k \ (int \ m * n))$ 
      using a-eq-g by simp
    also have  $\dots = (\sum_{n \leq k-1}. a \ k \ n * \text{unity-root } k \ (int \ m * n))$ 
      using  $\langle k > 0 \rangle$  by (intro sum.cong) auto
    finally have  $s \ f \ g \ k \ m =$ 
       $(\sum_{n \leq k-1}. a \ k \ n * \text{unity-root } k \ (int \ n * int \ m))$ 
      by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  }
  then show ?thesis by blast
qed

```

Theorem 8.6

theorem ramanujan-sum-dirichlet-form:

```

  fixes k n :: nat
  assumes k > 0
  shows  $c \ k \ n = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd n \ k. d * \text{moebius-mu } (k \text{ div } d))$ 
proof -
  define a :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex
  where a =  $(\lambda k \ m. 1 / \text{of-nat } k * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd m \ k. \text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } (k \text{ div } d) * \text{of-nat } d))$ 
  {fix m
   have  $a \ k \ m = (\text{if } \gcd m \ k = 1 \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0)$ 
   proof -
     have  $a \ k \ m = 1 / \text{of-nat } k * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd m \ k. \text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } (k \text{ div } d) * \text{of-nat } d)$ 
       unfolding a-def by blast
     also have  $2: \dots = 1 / \text{of-nat } k * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd m \ k. \text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } (k \text{ div } d) * \text{of-nat } d)$ 
       proof -
         {fix d :: nat
          assume dvd:  $d \text{ dvd } \gcd m \ k$ 
          have  $\text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } (k \text{ div } d) * \text{of-nat } d = \text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } k$ 
            proof -
              have  $(k \text{ div } d) * d = k$  using dvd by auto
              then show  $\text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } (k \text{ div } d) * \text{of-nat } d = \text{moebius-mu } d * \text{of-nat } k$ 
                by (simp add: algebra-simps, subst of-nat-mult[symmetric], simp)
            }
          }
        }

```

```

qed} note eq = this
show ?thesis using sum.cong by (simp add: eq)
qed

also have 3: ... = (∑ d | d dvd gcd m k. moebius-mu d)
  by (simp add: sum-distrib-left assms)
also have 4: ... = (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0)
  using sum-moebius-mu-divisors' by blast
finally show a k m = (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0)
  using coprime-def by blast
qed} note a-expr = this

let ?f = (λm. (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) *
  unity-root k (int m * n))
from gen-ramanujan-sum-fourier-expansion[of k id moebius-mu n] assms
have s (λx. of-nat (id x)) moebius-mu k n =
(∑ m ≤ k - 1.
  1 / of-nat k *
  (∑ d | d dvd gcd m k.
    moebius-mu d * of-nat (k div d) * of-nat d) *
  unity-root k (int m * n)) by simp
also have ... = (∑ m ≤ k - 1.
  a k m *
  unity-root k (int m * n)) using a-def by blast
also have ... = (∑ m ≤ k - 1.
  (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) *
  unity-root k (int m * n)) using a-expr by auto
also have ... = (∑ m ∈ {1..k}.
  (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) *
  unity-root k (int m * n))
proof -
  have periodic-arithmetic (λm. (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) *
    unity-root k (int m * n)) k
  proof -
    have periodic-arithmetic (λm. if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) k
      by (simp add: periodic-arithmetic-def)
    moreover have periodic-arithmetic (λm. unity-root k (int m * n)) k
      using unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult[of k n]
      by (subst mult.commute, simp)
    ultimately show periodic-arithmetic ?f k
      using mult-periodic-arithmetic by simp
  qed
  then have sum ?f {0..k - 1} = sum ?f {1..k}
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[of ?f k 1] by force
  then show ?thesis by (simp add: atMost-atLeast0)
qed
also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..k} ∧ gcd m k = 1.
  (if gcd m k = 1 then 1 else 0) *
  unity-root k (int m * int n))

```

by (intro sum.mono-neutral-right,auto)
 also have ... = $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \gcd m k = 1.$
 $\text{unity-root } k \text{ (int } m * \text{int } n))$ by simp
 also have ... = $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m k.$
 $\text{unity-root } k \text{ (int } m * \text{int } n))$
 using coprime-iff-gcd-eq-1 by presburger
 also have ... = $c k n$ unfolding ramanujan-sum-def by simp
 finally show ?thesis unfolding gen-ramanujan-sum-def by auto
 qed

corollary ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum:

$k > 0 \implies c k n = s \text{ id } \text{moebius-mu } k n$

using ramanujan-sum-dirichlet-form unfolding gen-ramanujan-sum-def by simp

Theorem 8.7

theorem gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib:

fixes $f g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$

assumes $a > 0 \ b > 0 \ m > 0 \ k > 0$

assumes coprime $a k$ coprime $b m$ coprime $k m$

assumes multiplicative-function f and

 multiplicative-function g

shows $s f g (m*k) (a*b) = s f g m a * s f g k b$

proof –

from assms(1–6) have eq: $\gcd (m*k) (a*b) = \gcd a m * \gcd k b$

by (simp add: linear-gcd gcd.commute mult.commute)

have $s f g (m*k) (a*b) =$

$(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd (m*k) (a*b). f(d) * g((m*k) \text{ div } d))$

unfolding gen-ramanujan-sum-def by (rule sum.cong, simp add: gcd.commute, blast)

also have ... =

$(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd a m * \gcd k b. f(d) * g((m*k) \text{ div } d))$

using eq by simp

also have ... =

$(\sum (d1, d2) \mid d1 \text{ dvd } \gcd a m \wedge d2 \text{ dvd } \gcd k b.$
 $f(d1*d2) * g((m*k) \text{ div } (d1*d2)))$

proof –

have b : $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda(d1, d2). d1 * d2)$

$\{(d1, d2). d1 \text{ dvd } \gcd a m \wedge d2 \text{ dvd } \gcd k b\}$

$\{d. d \text{ dvd } \gcd a m * \gcd k b\}$

using assms(5) reindex-product-bij by blast

have $(\sum (d1, d2) \mid d1 \text{ dvd } \gcd a m \wedge d2 \text{ dvd } \gcd k b.$

$f(d1 * d2) * g(m * k \text{ div } (d1 * d2))) =$

$(\sum x \in \{(d1, d2). d1 \text{ dvd } \gcd a m \wedge d2 \text{ dvd } \gcd k b\}.$

$f(\text{case } x \text{ of } (d1, d2) \Rightarrow d1 * d2) *$

$g(m * k \text{ div } (\text{case } x \text{ of } (d1, d2) \Rightarrow d1 * d2)))$

by (rule sum.cong, auto)

also have ... = $(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } \gcd a m * \gcd k b. f d * g(m * k \text{ div } d))$

using b by (rule sum.reindex-bij-betw[$\text{of } \lambda(d1, d2). d1*d2$])

finally show ?thesis by argo

qed
 also have ... = $(\sum d1 \mid d1 \text{ dvd gcd } a \ m. \sum d2 \mid d2 \text{ dvd gcd } k \ b. f \ (d1*d2) * g \ ((m*k) \text{ div } (d1*d2)))$
 by (simp add: sum.cartesian-product) (rule sum.cong,auto)
 also have ... = $(\sum d1 \mid d1 \text{ dvd gcd } a \ m. \sum d2 \mid d2 \text{ dvd gcd } k \ b. f \ d1 * f \ d2 * g \ ((m*k) \text{ div } (d1*d2)))$
 using assms(5) assms(8) multiplicative-function.mult-coprime
 by (intro sum.cong refl) fastforce+
 also have ... = $(\sum d1 \mid d1 \text{ dvd gcd } a \ m. \sum d2 \mid d2 \text{ dvd gcd } k \ b. f \ d1 * f \ d2 * g \ (m \text{ div } d1) * g \ (k \text{ div } d2))$
 proof (intro sum.cong refl, clarify, goal-cases)
 case (1 d1 d2)
 hence $g \ (m * k \text{ div } (d1 * d2)) = g \ (m \text{ div } d1) * g \ (k \text{ div } d2)$
 using assms(7,9) multipl-div
 by (meson coprime-commute dvd-gcdD1 dvd-gcdD2)
 thus ?case by simp
 qed
 also have ... = $(\sum i \in \{d1. d1 \text{ dvd gcd } a \ m\}. \sum j \in \{d2. d2 \text{ dvd gcd } k \ b\}. f \ i * g \ (m \text{ div } i) * (f \ j * g \ (k \text{ div } j)))$
 by (rule sum.cong,blast,rule sum.cong,blast,simp)
 also have ... = $(\sum d1 \mid d1 \text{ dvd gcd } a \ m. f \ d1 * g \ (m \text{ div } d1)) * (\sum d2 \mid d2 \text{ dvd gcd } k \ b. f \ d2 * g \ (k \text{ div } d2))$
 by (simp add: sum-product)
 also have ... = $s \ f \ g \ m \ a * s \ f \ g \ k \ b$
 unfolding gen-ramanujan-sum-def by (simp add: gcd commute)
 finally show ?thesis by blast
 qed

corollary gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib-right:

fixes $f \ g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
 assumes $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ and $m > 0$
 assumes coprime $b \ m$
 assumes multiplicative-function f and
 multiplicative-function g
 shows $s \ f \ g \ m \ (a * b) = s \ f \ g \ m \ a$

proof –
 have $s \ f \ g \ m \ (a*b) = s \ f \ g \ m \ a * s \ f \ g \ 1 \ b$
 using assms gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib[of $a \ b \ m \ 1 \ f \ g$] by simp
 also have ... = $s \ f \ g \ m \ a * f \ 1 * g \ 1$
 using gen-ramanujan-sum-1-n by auto
 also have ... = $s \ f \ g \ m \ a$
 using assms(5-6)
 by (simp add: multiplicative-function-def)
 finally show $s \ f \ g \ m \ (a*b) = s \ f \ g \ m \ a$ by blast
 qed

corollary gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib-left:

fixes $f \ g :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$
 assumes $a > 0$ and $k > 0$ and $m > 0$

assumes *coprime a k and coprime k m*
assumes *multiplicative-function f and*
multiplicative-function g
shows $s f g (m*k) a = s f g m a * g k$
proof –
have $s f g (m*k) a = s f g m a * s f g k 1$
using *assms gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib[of a 1 m k f g]* **by** *simp*
also have $\dots = s f g m a * f(1) * g(k)$
using *gen-ramanujan-sum-k-1* **by** *auto*
also have $\dots = s f g m a * g k$
using *assms(6)*
by *(simp add: multiplicative-function-def)*
finally show *?thesis* **by** *blast*
qed

corollary *ramanujan-sum-distrib*:
assumes $a > 0$ **and** $k > 0$ **and** $m > 0$ **and** $b > 0$
assumes *coprime a k coprime b m coprime m k*
shows $c (m*k) (a*b) = c m a * c k b$
proof –
have $c (m*k) (a*b) = s id moebius-mu (m*k) (a*b)$
using *ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum assms(2,3)* **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = (s id moebius-mu m a) * (s id moebius-mu k b)$
using *gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib[of a b m k id moebius-mu]*
assms mult-id mult-moebius mult-of-nat
coprime-commute[of m k] **by** *auto*
also have $\dots = c m a * c k b$ **using** *ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum*
assms **by** *simp*
finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*
qed

corollary *ramanujan-sum-distrib-right*:
assumes $a > 0$ **and** $k > 0$ **and** $m > 0$ **and** $b > 0$
assumes *coprime b m*
shows $c m (a*b) = c m a$
using *assms ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum mult-id mult-moebius*
mult-of-nat gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib-right **by** *auto*

corollary *ramanujan-sum-distrib-left*:
assumes $a > 0$ $k > 0$ $m > 0$
assumes *coprime a k coprime m k*
shows $c (m*k) a = c m a * moebius-mu k$
using *assms*
by *(simp add: ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum, subst gen-ramanujan-sum-distrib-left)*
(auto simp: coprime-commute mult-of-nat mult-moebius)

lemma *dirichlet-prod-completely-multiplicative-left*:
fixes $f h :: nat \Rightarrow complex$ **and** $k :: nat$

```

defines  $g \equiv (\lambda k. \text{moebius-mu } k * h \ k)$ 
defines  $F \equiv \text{dirichlet-prod } f \ g$ 
assumes  $k > 0$ 
assumes completely-multiplicative-function  $f$ 
           multiplicative-function  $h$ 
assumes  $\bigwedge p. \text{prime } p \implies f(p) \neq 0 \wedge f(p) \neq h(p)$ 
shows  $F \ k = f \ k * (\prod_{p \in \text{prime-factors } k} 1 - h \ p / f \ p)$ 
proof –
  have  $1: \text{multiplicative-function } (\lambda p. h(p) \ \text{div } f(p))$ 
    using multiplicative-function-divide
           comp-to-mult assms(4,5) by blast
  have  $F \ k = \text{dirichlet-prod } g \ f \ k$ 
    unfolding  $F\text{-def}$  using dirichlet-prod-commutes[of  $f \ g$ ] by auto
  also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \ \text{dvd } k. \text{moebius-mu } d * h \ d * f(k \ \text{div } d))$ 
    unfolding  $g\text{-def}$  dirichlet-prod-def by blast
  also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \ \text{dvd } k. \text{moebius-mu } d * h \ d * (f(k) \ \text{div } f(d)))$ 
    using multipl-div-mono[of  $f - k$ ] assms(4,6)
    by (intro sum.cong, auto, force)
  also have  $\dots = f \ k * (\sum d \mid d \ \text{dvd } k. \text{moebius-mu } d * (h \ d \ \text{div } f(d)))$ 
    by (simp add: sum-distrib-left algebra-simps)
  also have  $\dots = f \ k * (\prod_{p \in \text{prime-factors } k} 1 - (h \ p \ \text{div } f \ p))$ 
    using sum-divisors-moebius-mu-times-multiplicative[of  $\lambda p. h \ p \ \text{div } f \ p$ ] 1
           assms(3) by simp
  finally show  $F\text{-eq: } F \ k = f \ k * (\prod_{p \in \text{prime-factors } k} 1 - (h \ p \ \text{div } f \ p))$ 
    by blast
qed

```

Theorem 8.8

```

theorem gen-ramanujan-sum-dirichlet-expr:
  fixes  $f \ h :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$  and  $n \ k :: \text{nat}$ 
  defines  $g \equiv (\lambda k. \text{moebius-mu } k * h \ k)$ 
  defines  $F \equiv \text{dirichlet-prod } f \ g$ 
  defines  $N \equiv k \ \text{div } \text{gcd } n \ k$ 
  assumes completely-multiplicative-function  $f$ 
           multiplicative-function  $h$ 
  assumes  $\bigwedge p. \text{prime } p \implies f(p) \neq 0 \wedge f(p) \neq h(p)$ 
  assumes  $k > 0 \ n > 0$ 
  shows  $s \ f \ g \ k \ n = (F(k) * g(N)) \ \text{div } (F(N))$ 
proof –
  define  $a$  where  $a \equiv \text{gcd } n \ k$ 
  have  $2: k = a * N$  unfolding  $a\text{-def}$   $N\text{-def}$  by auto
  have  $3: a > 0$  using  $a\text{-def}$  assms(7,8) by simp
  have  $Ngr0: N > 0$  using assms(7,8)  $2 \ N\text{-def}$  by fastforce
  have  $f\text{-}k\text{-not-z: } f \ k \neq 0$ 
    using completely-multiplicative-nonzero assms(4,6,7) by blast
  have  $f\text{-}N\text{-not-z: } f \ N \neq 0$ 
    using completely-multiplicative-nonzero assms(4,6)  $Ngr0$  by blast
  have  $bij: \text{bij-betw } (\lambda d. a \ \text{div } d) \ \{d. d \ \text{dvd } a\} \ \{d. d \ \text{dvd } a\}$ 
    unfolding  $bij\text{-betw-def}$ 

```



```

proof
  show inj: inj-on ( $\lambda d. a \text{ div } d$ )  $\{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$ 
    using inj-on-def  $\exists$  dvd-div-eq-2 by blast
  show surj: ( $\lambda d. a \text{ div } d$ ) ‘  $\{d. d \text{ dvd } a\} = \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$ 
    unfolding image-def
  proof
    show  $\{y. \exists x \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}. y = a \text{ div } x\} \subseteq \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$ 
      by auto
    show  $\{d. d \text{ dvd } a\} \subseteq \{y. \exists x \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}. y = a \text{ div } x\}$ 
  proof
    fix d
    assume a:  $d \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$ 
    from a have 1:  $(a \text{ div } d) \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$  by auto
    from a have 2:  $d = a \text{ div } (a \text{ div } d)$  using  $\exists$  by auto
    from 1 2 show  $d \in \{y. \exists x \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}. y = a \text{ div } x\}$  by blast
  qed
qed
qed

have s f g k n =  $(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a. f(d) * \text{moebius-mu}(k \text{ div } d) * h(k \text{ div } d))$ 
  unfolding gen-ramanujan-sum-def g-def a-def by (simp add: mult.assoc)
also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a. f(d) * \text{moebius-mu}(a * N \text{ div } d) * h(a * N \text{ div } d))$ 
  using 2 by blast
also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a. f(a \text{ div } d) * \text{moebius-mu}(N * d) * h(N * d))$ 
  (is ?a = ?b)
proof –
  define f-aux where f-aux  $\equiv (\lambda d. f d * \text{moebius-mu}(a * N \text{ div } d) * h(a * N \text{ div } d))$ 
  have 1:  $?a = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a. f\text{-aux } d)$  using f-aux-def by blast
  {fix d :: nat
  assume d dvd a
  then have  $N * a \text{ div } (a \text{ div } d) = N * d$ 
    using  $\exists$  by force
  then have 2:  $?b = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a. f\text{-aux } (a \text{ div } d))$ 
    unfolding f-aux-def by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  show  $?a = ?b$ 
    using bij 1 2
    by (simp add: sum.reindex-bij-betw[of ((div) a)  $\{d. d \text{ dvd } a\} \{d. d \text{ dvd } a\}$ ])
  qed
also have  $\dots = \text{moebius-mu } N * h N * f a * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N d. \text{moebius-mu } d * (h d \text{ div } f d))$ 
  (is ?a = ?b)
proof –
  have  $?a = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N d. f(a \text{ div } d) * \text{moebius-mu}(N * d) * h(N * d))$ 
    by (rule sum.mono-neutral-right)(auto simp add: moebius-prod-not-coprime 3)
  also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N d. \text{moebius-mu } N * h N * f(a \text{ div } d) * \text{moebius-mu } d * h d)$ 

```

```

proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
  fix d
  assume a:  $d \in \{d. d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N \ d\}$ 
  then have 1:  $\text{moebius-mu } (N*d) = \text{moebius-mu } N * \text{moebius-mu } d$ 
    using mult-moebius unfolding multiplicative-function-def
    by (simp add: moebius-mu.mult-coprime)
  from a have 2:  $h \ (N*d) = h \ N * h \ d$ 
    using assms(5) unfolding multiplicative-function-def
    by (simp add: assms(5) multiplicative-function.mult-coprime)
  show  $f \ (a \text{ div } d) * \text{moebius-mu } (N * d) * h \ (N * d) =$ 
     $\text{moebius-mu } N * h \ N * f \ (a \text{ div } d) * \text{moebius-mu } d * h \ d$ 
    by (simp add: divide-simps 1 2)
  qed
  also have  $\dots = (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N \ d. \text{moebius-mu } N * h \ N * (f \ a$ 
     $\text{div } f \ d) * \text{moebius-mu } d * h \ d)$ 
    by (intro sum.cong refl) (use multipl-div-mono[of f - a] assms(4,6-8) 3 in
    force)
  also have  $\dots = \text{moebius-mu } N * h \ N * f \ a * (\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N \ d.$ 
     $\text{moebius-mu } d * (h \ d \text{ div } f \ d))$ 
    by (simp add: sum-distrib-left algebra-simps)
  finally show ?thesis by blast
  qed
  also have  $\dots =$ 
     $\text{moebius-mu } N * h \ N * f \ a * (\prod p \in \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } a \wedge \neg (p \text{ dvd } N)\}. 1 - (h \ p \text{ div } f \ p))$ 
    proof -
      have multiplicative-function  $(\lambda d. h \ d \text{ div } f \ d)$ 
        using multiplicative-function-divide
        comp-to-mult
        assms(4,5) by blast
      then have  $(\sum d \mid d \text{ dvd } a \wedge \text{coprime } N \ d. \text{moebius-mu } d * (h \ d \text{ div } f \ d)) =$ 
         $(\prod p \in \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } a \wedge \neg (p \text{ dvd } N)\}. 1 - (h \ p \text{ div } f \ p))$ 
        using sum-divisors-moebius-mu-times-multiplicative-revisited[
        of  $(\lambda d. h \ d \text{ div } f \ d) \ a \ N]$ 
        assms(8) Ngr0 3 by blast
      then show ?thesis by argo
    qed
  also have  $\dots = f(a) * \text{moebius-mu}(N) * h(N) *$ 
     $((\prod p \in \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } (a*N)\}. 1 - (h \ p \text{ div } f \ p)) \text{ div}$ 
     $(\prod p \in \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } N\}. 1 - (h \ p \text{ div } f \ p)))$ 
    proof -
      have  $\{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } a \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } N\} =$ 
         $(\{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } (a*N)\} - \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } N\})$ 
        using p-div-set[of a N] by blast
      then have eq2:  $(\prod p \in \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } a \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } N\}. 1 - h \ p / f \ p) =$ 
         $\text{prod } (\lambda p. 1 - h \ p / f \ p) (\{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } (a*N)\} - \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } N\})$ 
        by auto
      also have eq:  $\dots = \text{prod } (\lambda p. 1 - h \ p / f \ p) \{p. p \in \text{prime-factors } (a*N)\} \text{ div}$ 

```

```

      prod (λp. 1 - h p / f p) {p. p ∈ prime-factors N}
proof (intro prod-div-sub,simp,simp,simp add: 3 Ngr0 dvd-prime-factors,simp,standard)
  fix b
  assume b ∈ # prime-factorization N
  then have p-b: prime b using in-prime-factors-iff by blast
  then show f b = 0 ∨ h b ≠ f b using assms(6)[OF p-b] by auto
qed
also have ... = (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors (a*N)}. 1 - (h p div f p)) div
  (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors N}. 1 - (h p div f p)) by blast
finally have (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors a ∧ ¬ p dvd N}. 1 - h p / f p) =
  (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors (a*N)}. 1 - (h p div f p)) div
  (∏ p ∈ {p. p ∈ prime-factors N}. 1 - (h p div f p))
  using eq eq2 by auto
  then show ?thesis by simp
qed
also have ... = f(a) * moebius-mu(N) * h(N) * (F(k) div f(k)) * (f(N) div
F(N))
  (is ?a = ?b)
proof -
  have F(N) = (f N) * (∏ p ∈ prime-factors N. 1 - (h p div f p))
  unfolding F-def g-def
  by (intro dirichlet-prod-completely-multiplicative-left) (auto simp add: Ngr0
assms(4-6))
  then have eq-1: (∏ p ∈ prime-factors N. 1 - (h p div f p)) =
    F N div f N using 2 f-N-not-z by simp
  have F(k) = (f k) * (∏ p ∈ prime-factors k. 1 - (h p div f p))
  unfolding F-def g-def
  by (intro dirichlet-prod-completely-multiplicative-left) (auto simp add: assms(4-7))
  then have eq-2: (∏ p ∈ prime-factors k. 1 - (h p div f p)) =
    F k div f k using 2 f-k-not-z by simp

  have ?a = f a * moebius-mu N * h N *
    ((∏ p ∈ prime-factors k. 1 - (h p div f p)) div
    (∏ p ∈ prime-factors N. 1 - (h p div f p)))
  using 2 by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  also have ... = f a * moebius-mu N * h N * ((F k div f k) div (F N div f N))
  by (simp add: eq-1 eq-2)
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed
also have ... = moebius-mu N * h N * ((F k * f a * f N) div (F N * f k))
  by (simp add: algebra-simps)
also have ... = moebius-mu N * h N * ((F k * f(a*N)) div (F N * f k))
proof -
  have f a * f N = f (a*N)
  proof (cases a = 1 ∨ N = 1)
  case True
  then show ?thesis
    using assms(4) completely-multiplicative-function-def[of f]
    by auto

```

```

next
  case False
  then show ?thesis
    using 2 assms(4) completely-multiplicative-function-def[of f]
      Ngr0 3 by auto
qed
then show ?thesis by simp
qed
also have ... = moebius-mu N * h N * ((F k * f(k)) div (F N * f k))
  using 2 by blast
also have ... = g(N) * (F k div F N)
  using f-k-not-z g-def by simp
also have ... = (F(k)*g(N)) div (F(N)) by auto
finally show ?thesis by simp
qed

lemma totient-conv-moebius-mu-of-nat:
  of-nat (totient n) = dirichlet-prod moebius-mu of-nat n
proof (cases n = 0)
  case False
  show ?thesis
    by (rule moebius-inversion)
      (insert False, simp-all add: of-nat-sum [symmetric] totient-divisor-sum del:
of-nat-sum)
qed simp-all

corollary ramanujan-sum-k-n-dirichlet-expr:
  fixes k n :: nat
  assumes k > 0 n > 0
  shows c k n = of-nat (totient k) *
    moebius-mu (k div gcd n k) div
    of-nat (totient (k div gcd n k))
proof -
  define f :: nat ⇒ complex
  where f ≡ of-nat
  define F :: nat ⇒ complex
  where F ≡ (λd. dirichlet-prod f moebius-mu d)
  define g :: nat ⇒ complex
  where g ≡ (λl. moebius-mu l)
  define N where N ≡ k div gcd n k
  define h :: nat ⇒ complex
  where h ≡ (λx. (if x = 0 then 0 else 1))

  have F-is-totient-k: F k = totient k
  by (simp add: F-def f-def dirichlet-prod-commutes totient-conv-moebius-mu-of-nat[of k])
  have F-is-totient-N: F N = totient N
  by (simp add: F-def f-def dirichlet-prod-commutes totient-conv-moebius-mu-of-nat[of

```

$N]$)

```

have  $c\ k\ n = s\ id\ moebius\text{-}\mu\ k\ n$ 
  using ramanujan-sum-conv-gen-ramanujan-sum assms by blast
also have  $\dots = s\ f\ g\ k\ n$ 
  unfolding f-def g-def by auto
also have  $g = (\lambda k. moebius\text{-}\mu\ k * h\ k)$ 
  by (simp add: fun-eq-iff h-def g-def)
also have multiplicative-function h
  unfolding h-def by standard auto
hence  $s\ f\ (\lambda k. moebius\text{-}\mu\ k * h\ k)\ k\ n =$ 
   $dirichlet\text{-}prod\ of\text{-}nat\ (\lambda k. moebius\text{-}\mu\ k * h\ k)\ k *$ 
   $(moebius\text{-}\mu\ (k\ div\ gcd\ n\ k) * h\ (k\ div\ gcd\ n\ k)) /$ 
   $dirichlet\text{-}prod\ of\text{-}nat\ (\lambda k. moebius\text{-}\mu\ k * h\ k)\ (k\ div\ gcd\ n\ k)$ 
  unfolding f-def using assms mult-of-nat-c
  by (intro gen-ramanujan-sum-dirichlet-expr) (auto simp: h-def)
also have  $\dots = of\text{-}nat\ (totient\ k) * moebius\text{-}\mu\ (k\ div\ gcd\ n\ k) / of\text{-}nat\ (totient$ 
 $(k\ div\ gcd\ n\ k))$ 
  using F-is-totient-k F-is-totient-N by (auto simp: h-def F-def N-def f-def)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

no-notation ramanujan-sum ( $\langle c \rangle$ )
no-notation gen-ramanujan-sum ( $\langle s \rangle$ )

```

end

```

theory Gauss-Sums
imports
  HOL-Algebra.Coset
  HOL-Real-Asymp.Real-Asymp
  Ramanujan-Sums
begin

```

7 Gauss sums

```

bundle vec-lambda-syntax
begin
notation vec-lambda (binder  $\langle \chi \rangle\ 10$ )
end

```

```

unbundle no vec-lambda-syntax

```

7.1 Definition and basic properties

```

context dcharacter
begin

```

lemma *dir-periodic-arithmetic: periodic-arithmetic* χ n
unfolding *periodic-arithmetic-def* **by** (*simp add: periodic*)

definition *gauss-sum* $k = (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n (m*k))$

lemma *gauss-sum-periodic:*

periodic-arithmetic $(\lambda n. \text{gauss-sum } n) n$

proof –

have *periodic-arithmetic* χ n **using** *dir-periodic-arithmetic* **by** *simp*

let $?h = \lambda m k. \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n (m*k)$

{fix $m :: \text{nat}$

have *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda k. \text{unity-root } n (m*k)) n$

using *unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult[of n m]* **by** *simp*

have *periodic-arithmetic* $(?h m) n$

using *scalar-mult-periodic-arithmetic[OF ‹periodic-arithmetic $(\lambda k. \text{unity-root } n (m*k)) n$ ›]*

by *blast*}

then have *per-all*: $\forall m \in \{1..n\}. \text{periodic-arithmetic } (?h m) n$ **by** *blast*

have *periodic-arithmetic* $(\lambda k. (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n (m*k))) n$

using *fin-sum-periodic-arithmetic-set[OF per-all]* **by** *blast*

then show *?thesis*

unfolding *gauss-sum-def* **by** *blast*

qed

lemma *ramanujan-sum-conv-gauss-sum:*

assumes $\chi = \text{principal-dchar } n$

shows *ramanujan-sum* $n k = \text{gauss-sum } k$

proof –

{fix m

from *assms*

have *1*: *coprime* $m n \implies \chi(m) = 1$ **and**

2: $\neg \text{coprime } m n \implies \chi(m) = 0$

unfolding *principal-dchar-def* **by** *auto*}

note *eq = this*

have *gauss-sum* $k = (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n (m*k))$

unfolding *gauss-sum-def* **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } m n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n (m*k))$

by (*rule sum.mono-neutral-right, simp, blast, simp add: eq*)

also have $\dots = (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..n\} \wedge \text{coprime } m n . \text{unity-root } n (m*k))$

by (*simp add: eq*)

also have $\dots = \text{ramanujan-sum } n k$ **unfolding** *ramanujan-sum-def* **by** *blast*

finally show *?thesis ..*

qed

lemma *cnj-mult-self:*

assumes *coprime* $k n$

shows *cnj* $(\chi k) * \chi k = 1$

proof –

```

have cnj ( $\chi$   $k$ ) *  $\chi$   $k$  = norm ( $\chi$   $k$ )2
  by (simp add: mult.commute complex-mult-cnj cmod-def)
also have ... = 1
  using norm[of  $k$ ] assms by simp
finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

Theorem 8.9

theorem *gauss-sum-reduction*:

```

assumes coprime  $k$   $n$ 
shows gauss-sum  $k$  = cnj ( $\chi$   $k$ ) * gauss-sum 1
proof -
  from  $n$  have n-pos:  $n > 0$  by simp
  have gauss-sum  $k$  = ( $\sum r = 1..n . \chi(r) * \text{unity-root } n (r*k)$ )
    unfolding gauss-sum-def by simp
  also have ... = ( $\sum r = 1..n . \text{cnj } (\chi(k)) * \chi k * \chi r * \text{unity-root } n (r*k)$ )
    using assms by (intro sum.cong) (auto simp: cnj-mult-self)
  also have ... = ( $\sum r = 1..n . \text{cnj } (\chi(k)) * \chi (k*r) * \text{unity-root } n (r*k)$ )
    by (intro sum.cong) auto
  also have ... = cnj ( $\chi(k)$ ) * ( $\sum r = 1..n . \chi (k*r) * \text{unity-root } n (r*k)$ )
    by (simp add: sum-distrib-left algebra-simps)
  also have ... = cnj ( $\chi(k)$ ) * ( $\sum r = 1..n . \chi r * \text{unity-root } n r$ )
  proof -
    have 1: periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda r. \chi r * \text{unity-root } n r$ )  $n$ 
      using dir-periodic-arithmetic unity-periodic-arithmetic mult-periodic-arithmetic
    by blast
    have ( $\sum r = 1..n . \chi (k*r) * \text{unity-root } n (r*k)$ ) =
      ( $\sum r = 1..n . \chi (r) * \text{unity-root } n r$ )
      using periodic-arithmetic-remove-homothecy[OF assms(1) 1 n-pos]
      by (simp add: algebra-simps)
    then show ?thesis by argo
  qed
  also have ... = cnj ( $\chi(k)$ ) * gauss-sum 1
    using gauss-sum-def by simp
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

The following variant takes an integer argument instead.

definition *gauss-sum-int* k = ($\sum m=1..n . \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (\text{int } m*k)$)

sublocale *gauss-sum-int*: periodic-fun-simple gauss-sum-int int n

```

proof
  fix  $k$ 
  show gauss-sum-int ( $k + \text{int } n$ ) = gauss-sum-int  $k$ 
    by (simp add: gauss-sum-int-def ring-distrib unity-root-add)
qed

```

lemma *gauss-sum-int-cong*:

assumes [$a = b$] (mod int n)

```

shows gauss-sum-int a = gauss-sum-int b
proof -
  from assms obtain k where k: b = a + int n * k
  by (subst (asm) cong-iff-lin) auto
  thus ?thesis
    using gauss-sum-int.plus-of-int[of a k] by (auto simp: algebra-simps)
qed

lemma gauss-sum-conv-gauss-sum-int:
  gauss-sum k = gauss-sum-int (int k)
  unfolding gauss-sum-def gauss-sum-int-def by auto

lemma gauss-sum-int-conv-gauss-sum:
  gauss-sum-int k = gauss-sum (nat (k mod n))
proof -
  have gauss-sum (nat (k mod n)) = gauss-sum-int (int (nat (k mod n)))
  by (simp add: gauss-sum-conv-gauss-sum-int)
  also have ... = gauss-sum-int k
  using n
  by (intro gauss-sum-int-cong) (auto simp: cong-def)
  finally show ?thesis ..
qed

lemma gauss-int-periodic: periodic-arithmetic gauss-sum-int n
  unfolding periodic-arithmetic-def gauss-sum-int-conv-gauss-sum by simp

proposition dcharacter-fourier-expansion:
   $\chi m = (\sum k=1..n. 1 / n * gauss-sum-int (-k) * unity-root n (m*k))$ 
proof -
  define g where g = ( $\lambda x. 1 / of-nat n * (\sum m<n. \chi m * unity-root n (- int x * int m))$ )
  have per: periodic-arithmetic  $\chi$  n using dir-periodic-arithmetic by simp
  have  $\chi m = (\sum k<n. g k * unity-root n (m * int k))$ 
  using fourier-expansion-periodic-arithmetic(2)[OF - per, of m] n by (auto simp:
g-def)
  also have ... = ( $\sum k = 1..n. g k * unity-root n (m * int k)$ )
  proof -
    have g-per: periodic-arithmetic g n
    using fourier-expansion-periodic-arithmetic(1)[OF - per] n by (simp add:
g-def)
    have fact-per: periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda k. g k * unity-root n (int m * int k)$ ) n
    using mult-periodic-arithmetic[OF g-per] unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult by
auto
    show ?thesis
    proof -
      have ( $\sum k<n. g k * unity-root n (int m * int k)$ ) =
      ( $\sum l = 0..n - Suc 0. g l * unity-root n (int m * int l)$ )
      using n by (intro sum.cong) auto
      also have ... = ( $\sum l = Suc 0..n. g l * unity-root n (int m * int l)$ )

```



```

      using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[OF fact-per, of 1] n
by auto
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed
qed
also have ... = ( $\sum k = 1..n. (1 / \text{of-nat } n) * \text{gauss-sum-int } (-k) * \text{unity-root}$ 
 $n (m*k)$ )
proof -
  {fix k :: nat
  have shift: ( $\sum m < n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ ) =
    ( $\sum m = 1..n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ )
  proof -
    have per-unit: periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda m. \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ ) n
    using unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult by blast
    then have prod-per: periodic-arithmetic ( $\lambda m. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ ) n
    using per mult-periodic-arithmetic by blast
    show ?thesis
  proof -
    have ( $\sum m < n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ ) =
      ( $\sum l = 0..n - \text{Suc } 0. \chi l * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } l)$ )
    using n by (intro sum.cong) auto
    also have ... = ( $\sum m = 1..n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ )
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[OF prod-per, of 1]
  n by auto
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed
qed
have g k = 1 / of-nat n *
  ( $\sum m < n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ )
  using g-def by auto
also have ... = 1 / of-nat n *
  ( $\sum m = 1..n. \chi m * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } k * \text{int } m)$ )
  using shift by simp
also have ... = 1 / of-nat n * gauss-sum-int (-k)
  unfolding gauss-sum-int-def
  by (simp add: algebra-simps)
finally have g k = 1 / of-nat n * gauss-sum-int (-k) by simp}
note g-expr = this
show ?thesis
  by (rule sum.cong, simp, simp add: g-expr)
qed
finally show ?thesis by auto
qed

```

7.2 Separability

definition $\text{separable } k \longleftrightarrow \text{gauss-sum } k = \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{gauss-sum } 1$

corollary *gauss-coprime-separable*:

assumes *coprime k n*

shows *separable k*

using *gauss-sum-reduction*[*OF assms*] **unfolding** *separable-def* **by** *simp*

Theorem 8.10

theorem *global-separability-condition*:

$(\forall n > 0. \text{separable } n) \longleftrightarrow (\forall k > 0. \neg \text{coprime } k \ n \longrightarrow \text{gauss-sum } k = 0)$

proof –

{**fix** *k*

assume $\neg \text{coprime } k \ n$

then have $\chi(k) = 0$ **by** (*simp add: eq-zero*)

then have $\text{cnj } (\chi \ k) = 0$ **by** *blast*

then have $\text{separable } k \longleftrightarrow \text{gauss-sum } k = 0$

unfolding *separable-def* **by** *auto*}

note *not-case = this*

show *?thesis*

using *gauss-coprime-separable not-case separable-def* **by** *blast*

qed

lemma *of-real-moebius-mu* [*simp*]: *of-real (moebius-mu k) = moebius-mu k*

by (*simp add: moebius-mu-def*)

corollary *principal-not-totally-separable*:

assumes $\chi = \text{principal-dchar } n$

shows $\neg(\forall k > 0. \text{separable } k)$

proof –

have *n-pos*: $n > 0$ **using** *n* **by** *simp*

have *tot-0*: *totient* *n* $\neq 0$ **by** (*simp add: n-pos*)

have *moebius-mu* (*n div gcd n n*) $\neq 0$ **by** (*simp add: <n > 0*)

then have *moeb-0*: $\exists k. \text{moebius-mu } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n) \neq 0$ **by** *blast*

have *lem*: $\text{gauss-sum } k = \text{totient } n * \text{moebius-mu } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n) / \text{totient } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n)$

if $k > 0$ **for** *k*

proof –

have $\text{gauss-sum } k = \text{ramanujan-sum } n \ k$

using *ramanujan-sum-conv-gauss-sum*[*OF assms(1)*] **..**

also have $\dots = \text{totient } n * \text{moebius-mu } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n) / (\text{totient } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n))$

by (*simp add: ramanujan-sum-k-n-dirichlet-expr*[*OF n-pos that*])

finally show *?thesis* .

qed

have *2*: $\neg \text{coprime } n \ n$ **using** *n* **by** *auto*

have *3*: $\text{gauss-sum } n \neq 0$

using *lem*[*OF n-pos*] *tot-0 moebius-mu-1* **by** *simp*

from *n-pos 2 3* **have**

$\exists k > 0. \neg \text{coprime } k \ n \wedge \text{gauss-sum } k \neq 0$ **by** *blast*

then obtain k where $k > 0 \wedge \neg \text{coprime } k \ n \wedge \text{gauss-sum } k \neq 0$ by blast
note $\text{right-not-zero} = \text{this}$

have $\text{cnj } (\chi \ k) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 = 0$ if $\neg \text{coprime } k \ n$ for k
using that assms by (simp add: principal-dchar-def)
then show ?thesis
unfolding separable-def using right-not-zero by auto
qed

Theorem 8.11

theorem $\text{gauss-sum-1-mod-square-eq-k}$:
assumes $(\forall k. k > 0 \longrightarrow \text{separable } k)$
shows $\text{norm } (\text{gauss-sum } 1) ^ 2 = \text{real } n$
proof -
have $(\text{norm } (\text{gauss-sum } 1)) ^ 2 = \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{cnj } (\text{gauss-sum } 1)$
using complex-norm-square by blast
also have $\dots = \text{gauss-sum } 1 * (\sum m = 1..n. \text{cnj } (\chi(m)) * \text{unity-root } n \ (-m))$
proof -
have $\text{cnj } (\text{gauss-sum } 1) = (\sum m = 1..n. \text{cnj } (\chi(m)) * \text{unity-root } n \ (-m))$
unfolding gauss-sum-def by (simp add: unity-root-uminus)
then show ?thesis by argo
qed
also have $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n. \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{cnj } (\chi(m)) * \text{unity-root } n \ (-m))$
by (subst sum-distrib-left)(simp add: algebra-simps)
also have $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n. \text{gauss-sum } m * \text{unity-root } n \ (-m))$
proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
fix x
assume as: $x \in \{1..n\}$
show $\text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{cnj } (\chi \ x) * \text{unity-root } n \ (-x) =$
 $\text{gauss-sum } x * \text{unity-root } n \ (-x)$
using $\text{assms}(1)$ unfolding separable-def
by (rule allE[of - x]) (use as in auto)
qed
also have $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n. (\sum r = 1..n. \chi \ r * \text{unity-root } n \ (r*m) * \text{unity-root } n \ (-m)))$
unfolding gauss-sum-def
by (rule sum.cong,simp,rule sum-distrib-right)
also have $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n. (\sum r = 1..n. \chi \ r * \text{unity-root } n \ (m*(r-1))))$
by (intro sum.cong refl) (auto simp: unity-root-diff of-nat-diff unity-root-uminus field-simps)
also have $\dots = (\sum r=1..n. (\sum m=1..n. \chi(r) * \text{unity-root } n \ (m*(r-1))))$
by (rule sum.swap)
also have $\dots = (\sum r=1..n. \chi(r) * (\sum m=1..n. \text{unity-root } n \ (m*(r-1))))$
by (rule sum.cong, simp, simp add: sum-distrib-left)
also have $\dots = (\sum r=1..n. \chi(r) * \text{unity-root-sum } n \ (r-1))$
proof (intro sum.cong refl)
fix x
assume $x \in \{1..n\}$
then have $1: \text{periodic-arithmetic } (\lambda m. \text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } (m * (x - 1)))) \ n$

```

    using unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult[of n x-1]
    by (simp add: mult.commute)
  have  $(\sum m = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \text{ (int } (m * (x - 1)))) =$ 
     $(\sum m = 0..n-1. \text{unity-root } n \text{ (int } (m * (x - 1))))$ 
    using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[OF 1 -, of 1] n by
simp
  also have  $\dots = \text{unity-root-sum } n \text{ (x-1)}$ 
    using n unfolding unity-root-sum-def by (intro sum.cong) (auto simp:
mult-ac)
  finally have  $(\sum m = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \text{ (int } (m * (x - 1)))) =$ 
     $\text{unity-root-sum } n \text{ (int } (x - 1))$  .
  then show  $\chi x * (\sum m = 1..n. \text{unity-root } n \text{ (int } (m * (x - 1)))) =$ 
     $\chi x * \text{unity-root-sum } n \text{ (int } (x - 1))$  by argo
qed
also have  $\dots = (\sum r \in \{1\}. \chi r * \text{unity-root-sum } n \text{ (int } (r - 1)))$ 
    using n unity-root-sum-nonzero-iff int-ops(6)
    by (intro sum.mono-neutral-right) auto
also have  $\dots = \chi 1 * n$  using n by simp
also have  $\dots = n$  by simp
finally show ?thesis
    using of-real-eq-iff by fastforce
qed

```

Theorem 8.12

theorem gauss-sum-nonzero-noncoprime-necessary-condition:

```

  assumes gauss-sum k ≠ 0 ¬coprime k n k > 0
  defines d ≡ n div gcd k n
  assumes coprime a n [a = 1] (mod d)
  shows d dvd n d < n χ a = 1
proof -
  show d dvd n
    unfolding d-def using n by (subst div-dvd-iff-mult) auto
  from assms(2) have gcd k n ≠ 1 by blast
  then have gcd k n > 1 using assms(3,4) by (simp add: nat-neq-iff)
  with n show d < n by (simp add: d-def)

```

```

  have periodic-arithmetic (λr. χ (r)* unity-root n (k*r)) n
    using mult-periodic-arithmetic[OF dir-periodic-arithmetic unity-periodic-arithmetic-mult]
  by auto
  then have 1: periodic-arithmetic (λr. χ (r)* unity-root n (r*k)) n
    by (simp add: algebra-simps)

```

```

  have gauss-sum k =  $(\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n \text{ (m*k)})$ 
    unfolding gauss-sum-def by blast
  also have  $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m*a) * \text{unity-root } n \text{ (m*a*k)})$ 
    using periodic-arithmetic-remove-homothecy[OF assms(5) 1] n by auto
  also have  $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m*a) * \text{unity-root } n \text{ (m*k)})$ 
  proof (intro sum.cong refl)
    fix m

```

from *assms*(6) **obtain** *b* **where** $a = 1 + b*d$
using $\langle d < n \rangle$ *assms*(5) *cong-to-1'-nat* **by** *auto*
then have $m*a*k = m*k + m*b*(n \text{ div } \text{gcd } k \ n)*k$
by (*simp add: algebra-simps d-def*)
also have $\dots = m*k + m*b*n*(k \text{ div } \text{gcd } k \ n)$
by (*simp add: div-mult-swap dvd-div-mult*)
also obtain *p* **where** $\dots = m*k + m*b*n*p$ **by** *blast*
finally have $m*a*k = m*k + m*b*p*n$ **by** *simp*
then have $1: m*a*k \bmod n = m*k \bmod n$
using *mod-mult-self1* **by** *simp*
then have $\text{unity-root } n \ (m * a * k) = \text{unity-root } n \ (m * k)$
proof –
have $\text{unity-root } n \ (m * a * k) = \text{unity-root } n \ ((m * a * k) \bmod n)$
using *unity-root-mod[of n] zmod-int* **by** *simp*
also have $\dots = \text{unity-root } n \ (m * k)$
using *unity-root-mod[of n] zmod-int 1* **by** *presburger*
finally show *?thesis* **by** *blast*
qed
then show $\chi \ (m * a) * \text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } (m * a * k)) =$
 $\chi \ (m * a) * \text{unity-root } n \ (\text{int } (m * k))$ **by** *auto*
qed
also have $\dots = (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(a) * (\chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n \ (m*k)))$
by (*rule sum.cong,simp,subst mult,simp*)
also have $\dots = \chi(a) * (\sum m = 1..n . \chi(m) * \text{unity-root } n \ (m*k))$
by (*simp add: sum-distrib-left[symmetric]*)
also have $\dots = \chi(a) * \text{gauss-sum } k$
unfolding *gauss-sum-def* **by** *blast*
finally have $\text{gauss-sum } k = \chi(a) * \text{gauss-sum } k$ **by** *blast*
then show $\chi \ a = 1$
using *assms*(1) **by** *simp*
qed

7.3 Induced moduli and primitive characters

definition *induced-modulus* $d \longleftrightarrow d \text{ dvd } n \wedge (\forall a. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge [a = 1] \ (\bmod \ d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = 1)$

lemma *induced-modulus-dvd: induced-modulus* $d \Longrightarrow d \text{ dvd } n$
unfolding *induced-modulus-def* **by** *blast*

lemma *induced-modulusI* [*intro?*]:
 $d \text{ dvd } n \Longrightarrow (\bigwedge a. \text{coprime } a \ n \Longrightarrow [a = 1] \ (\bmod \ d) \Longrightarrow \chi \ a = 1) \Longrightarrow \text{induced-modulus } d$
unfolding *induced-modulus-def* **by** *auto*

lemma *induced-modulusD: induced-modulus* $d \Longrightarrow \text{coprime } a \ n \Longrightarrow [a = 1] \ (\bmod \ d) \Longrightarrow \chi \ a = 1$
unfolding *induced-modulus-def* **by** *blast*

```

lemma zero-not-ind-mod:  $\neg$ induced-modulus 0
  unfolding induced-modulus-def using n by simp

lemma div-gcd-dvd1: (a :: 'a :: semiring-gcd) div gcd a b dvd a
  by (metis dvd-def dvd-div-mult-self gcd-dvd1)

lemma div-gcd-dvd2: (b :: 'a :: semiring-gcd) div gcd a b dvd b
  by (metis div-gcd-dvd1 gcd.commute)

lemma g-non-zero-ind-mod:
  assumes gauss-sum k  $\neq$  0  $\neg$ coprime k n k > 0
  shows induced-modulus (n div gcd k n)
proof
  show n div gcd k n dvd n
    by (metis dvd-div-mult-self dvd-triv-left gcd.commute gcd-dvd1)
  fix a :: nat
  assume coprime a n [a = 1] (mod n div gcd k n)
  thus  $\chi$  a = 1
    using assms n gauss-sum-nonzero-noncoprime-necessary-condition(3) by auto
qed

lemma induced-modulus-modulus: induced-modulus n
  unfolding induced-modulus-def
  by (metis dvd-refl local.cong mult.one)

Theorem 8.13

theorem one-induced-iff-principal:
  induced-modulus 1  $\longleftrightarrow$   $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
proof
  assume induced-modulus 1
  then have ( $\forall$  a. coprime a n  $\longrightarrow$   $\chi$  a = 1)
    unfolding induced-modulus-def by simp
  then show  $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
    unfolding principal-dchar-def using eq-zero by auto
next
  assume as:  $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
  {fix a
  assume coprime a n
  then have  $\chi$  a = 1
    using principal-dchar-def as by simp}
  then show induced-modulus 1
    unfolding induced-modulus-def by auto
qed

end

locale primitive-dchar = dcharacter +
  assumes no-induced-modulus:  $\neg(\exists d < n. \text{induced-modulus } d)$ 

```

locale *nonprimitive-dchar* = *dcharacter* +
assumes *induced-modulus*: $\exists d < n. \text{ induced-modulus } d$

lemma (**in** *nonprimitive-dchar*) *nonprimitive*: $\neg \text{primitive-dchar } n \ \chi$
proof
assume *primitive-dchar* $n \ \chi$
then interpret *A*: *primitive-dchar* n *residue-mult-group* $n \ \chi$
by *auto*
from *A.no-induced-modulus induced-modulus* **show** *False* **by** *contradiction*
qed

lemma (**in** *dcharacter*) *primitive-dchar-iff*:
 $\text{primitive-dchar } n \ \chi \longleftrightarrow \neg(\exists d < n. \text{ induced-modulus } d)$
unfolding *primitive-dchar-def primitive-dchar-axioms-def*
using *dcharacter-axioms* **by** *metis*

lemma (**in** *residues-nat*) *principal-not-primitive*:
 $\neg \text{primitive-dchar } n \ (\text{principal-dchar } n)$
unfolding *principal.primitive-dchar-iff*
using *principal.one-induced-iff-principal* n **by** *auto*

lemma (**in** *dcharacter*) *not-primitive-imp-nonprimitive*:
assumes $\neg \text{primitive-dchar } n \ \chi$
shows *nonprimitive-dchar* $n \ \chi$
using *assms dcharacter-axioms*
unfolding *nonprimitive-dchar-def primitive-dchar-def*
primitive-dchar-axioms-def nonprimitive-dchar-axioms-def **by** *auto*

Theorem 8.14

theorem (**in** *dcharacter*) *prime-nonprincipal-is-primitive*:
assumes *prime* n
assumes $\chi \neq \text{principal-dchar } n$
shows *primitive-dchar* $n \ \chi$
proof –
{fix m
assume *induced-modulus* m
then have $m = n$
using *assms prime-nat-iff induced-modulus-def*
one-induced-iff-principal **by** *blast*}
then show *?thesis* **using** *primitive-dchar-iff* **by** *blast*
qed

Theorem 8.15

corollary (**in** *primitive-dchar*) *primitive-encoding*:
 $\forall k > 0. \neg \text{coprime } k \ n \longrightarrow \text{gauss-sum } k = 0$
 $\forall k > 0. \text{ separable } k$
 $\text{norm } (\text{gauss-sum } 1) \wedge 2 = n$
proof *safe*

show $1: \text{gauss-sum } k = 0 \text{ if } k > 0 \text{ and } \neg \text{coprime } k \ n \text{ for } k$
proof (rule ccontr)
 assume $\text{gauss-sum } k \neq 0$
 hence $\text{induced-modulus } (n \text{ div gcd } k \ n)$
 using that **by** (intro g-non-zero-ind-mod) auto
 moreover **have** $n \text{ div gcd } k \ n < n$
 using n that
 by (meson coprime-iff-gcd-eq-1 div-eq-dividend-iff le-less-trans
 linorder-neqE-nat nat-dvd-not-less principal.div-gcd-dvd2 zero-le-one)
 ultimately **show** False **using** no-induced-modulus **by** blast
qed

have $(\forall n > 0. \text{separable } n)$
 unfolding global-separability-condition **by** (auto intro!: 1)
thus separable n **if** $n > 0$ **for** n
 using that **by** blast
thus norm $(\text{gauss-sum } 1) \wedge 2 = n$
 using gauss-sum-1-mod-square-eq-k **by** blast
qed

Theorem 8.16

lemma (in dcharacter) induced-modulus-altdef1:
 $\text{induced-modulus } d \longleftrightarrow$
 $d \text{ dvd } n \wedge (\forall a \ b. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge \text{coprime } b \ n \wedge [a = b] \ (\text{mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = \chi \ b)$
proof
 assume $1: \text{induced-modulus } d$
 with n **have** $d: d \text{ dvd } n \ d > 0$
 by (auto simp: induced-modulus-def intro: Nat.gr0I)
show $d \text{ dvd } n \wedge (\forall a \ b. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge \text{coprime } b \ n \wedge [a = b] \ (\text{mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi(a)$
 $= \chi(b))$
proof safe
 fix $a \ b$
 assume $2: \text{coprime } a \ n \ \text{coprime } b \ n \ [a = b] \ (\text{mod } d)$
show $\chi(a) = \chi(b)$
proof –
 from $2(1)$ **obtain** a' **where** $\text{eq}: [a * a' = 1] \ (\text{mod } n)$
 using cong-solve **by** blast
 from this d **have** $[a * a' = 1] \ (\text{mod } d)$
 using cong-dvd-modulus-nat **by** blast
 from this 1 **have** $\chi(a * a') = 1$
 unfolding induced-modulus-def
 by (meson $2(2)$ eq cong-imp-coprime cong-sym coprime-divisors gcd-nat.refl
 one-dvd)
then **have** $3: \chi(a) * \chi(a') = 1$
 by simp

 from $2(3)$ **have** $[a * a' = b * a'] \ (\text{mod } d)$
 by (simp add: cong-scalar-right)
 moreover **have** $4: [b * a' = 1] \ (\text{mod } d)$


```

    using <[a * a' = 1] (mod d)> calculation cong-sym cong-trans by blast
  have  $\chi(b*a') = 1$ 
  proof -
    have coprime (b*a') n
      using 2(2) cong-imp-coprime[OF cong-sym[OF eq]] by simp
    then show ?thesis using 4 induced-modulus-def 1 by blast
  qed
  then have 4:  $\chi(b)*\chi(a') = 1$ 
    by simp
  from 3 4 show  $\chi(a) = \chi(b)$ 
    using mult-cancel-left
    by (cases  $\chi(a') = 0$ ) (fastforce simp add: field-simps)+
  qed
qed fact+
next
  assume *:  $d \text{ dvd } n \wedge (\forall a b. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge \text{coprime } b \ n \wedge [a = b] \text{ (mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = \chi \ b)$ 
  then have  $\forall a. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge \text{coprime } 1 \ n \wedge [a = 1] \text{ (mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = \chi \ 1$ 
    by blast
  then have  $\forall a. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge [a = 1] \text{ (mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = 1$ 
    using coprime-1-left by simp
  then show induced-modulus d
    unfolding induced-modulus-def using * by blast
  qed

```

Exercise 8.4

lemma *induced-modulus-altdef2-lemma:*

```

  fixes n a d q :: nat
  defines q  $\equiv (\prod p \mid \text{prime } p \wedge p \text{ dvd } n \wedge \neg (p \text{ dvd } a). p)$ 
  defines m  $\equiv a + q * d$ 
  assumes n > 0 coprime a d
  shows [m = a] (mod d) and coprime m n
proof (simp add: assms(2) cong-add-lcancel-0-nat cong-mult-self-right)
  have fin: finite {p. prime p  $\wedge$  p dvd n  $\wedge$   $\neg$  (p dvd a)} by (simp add: assms)
  { fix p
    assume 4: prime p p dvd m p dvd n
    have p = 1
    proof (cases p dvd a)
      case True
      from this assms 4(2) have p dvd q*d
        by (simp add: dvd-add-right-iff)
      then have a1: p dvd q  $\vee$  p dvd d
        using 4(1) prime-dvd-mult-iff by blast

      have a2:  $\neg$  (p dvd q)
      proof (rule ccontr, simp)
        assume p dvd q
        then have p dvd ( $\prod p \mid \text{prime } p \wedge p \text{ dvd } n \wedge \neg (p \text{ dvd } a). p$ )
          unfolding assms by simp

```

```

then have  $\exists x \in \{p. \text{prime } p \wedge p \text{ dvd } n \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } a\}. p \text{ dvd } x$ 
  using prime-dvd-prod-iff[OF fin 4(1)] by simp
then obtain  $x$  where  $c: p \text{ dvd } x \wedge \text{prime } x \wedge \neg x \text{ dvd } a$  by blast
then have  $p = x$  using 4(1) by (simp add: primes-dvd-imp-eq)
then show False using True c by auto
qed
have a3:  $\neg (p \text{ dvd } d)$ 
  using True assms 4(1) coprime-def not-prime-unit by auto

from a1 a2 a3 show ?thesis by simp
next
case False
then have  $p \text{ dvd } q$ 
proof -
  have in-s:  $p \in \{p. \text{prime } p \wedge p \text{ dvd } n \wedge \neg p \text{ dvd } a\}$ 
    using False 4(3) 4(1) by simp
  show  $p \text{ dvd } q$ 
    unfolding assms using dvd-prodI[OF fin in-s ] by fast
qed
then have  $p \text{ dvd } q * d$  by simp
then have  $p \text{ dvd } a$  using 4(2) assms
  by (simp add: dvd-add-left-iff)
then show ?thesis using False by auto
qed
}
note lem = this
show coprime m n
proof (subst coprime-iff-gcd-eq-1)
  {fix a
    assume  $a \text{ dvd } m \wedge a \text{ dvd } n \wedge a \neq 1$ 
    {fix p
      assume prime p p dvd a
      then have  $p \text{ dvd } m \wedge p \text{ dvd } n$ 
        using  $\langle a \text{ dvd } m \rangle \langle a \text{ dvd } n \rangle$  by auto
      from lem have  $p = a$ 
        using not-prime-1  $\langle \text{prime } p \rangle \langle p \text{ dvd } m \rangle \langle p \text{ dvd } n \rangle$  by blast}
    then have prime a
      using prime-prime-factor[of a]  $\langle a \neq 1 \rangle$  by blast
    then have  $a = 1$  using lem  $\langle a \text{ dvd } m \rangle \langle a \text{ dvd } n \rangle$  by blast
    then have False using  $\langle a = 1 \rangle \langle a \neq 1 \rangle$  by blast
  }
  then show  $\text{gcd } m \ n = 1$  by blast
qed
qed

```

Theorem 8.17

The case $d = 1$ is exactly the case described in $d\text{character } ?n \text{ } ?\chi \implies d\text{character.induced-modulus } ?n \text{ } ?\chi \ 1 = (?\chi = \text{principal-dchar } ?n)$.

```

theorem (in dcharacter) induced-modulus-altdef2:
  assumes  $d \nmid n$   $d \neq 1$ 
  defines  $\chi_1 \equiv \text{principal-dchar } n$ 
  shows  $\text{induced-modulus } d \longleftrightarrow (\exists \Phi. \text{dcharacter } d \ \Phi \wedge (\forall k. \chi \ k = \Phi \ k * \chi_1 \ k))$ 
proof
  from  $n$  have  $n\text{-pos}$ :  $n > 0$  by simp
  assume  $as\text{-im}$ :  $\text{induced-modulus } d$ 
  define  $f$  where
     $f \equiv (\lambda k. k +$ 
      (if  $k = 1$  then
        0
      else  $(\text{prod id } \{p. \text{prime } p \wedge p \nmid n \wedge \neg (p \nmid k)\}) * d$ 
      )
    )
  have  $[simp]$ :  $f \ (Suc \ 0) = 1$  unfolding  $f\text{-def}$  by simp
  {
    fix  $k$ 
    assume  $as$ :  $\text{coprime } k \ d$ 
    hence  $[f \ k = k] \ (\text{mod } d)$   $\text{coprime } (f \ k) \ n$ 
    using  $\text{induced-modulus-altdef2-lemma}[OF \ n\text{-pos } as]$  by (simp-all add:  $f\text{-def}$ )
  }
  note  $m\text{-prop} = \text{this}$ 

  define  $\Phi$  where
     $\Phi \equiv (\lambda n. (\text{if } \neg \text{coprime } n \ d \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \chi(f \ n)))$ 

  have  $\Phi\text{-1}$ :  $\Phi \ 1 = 1$ 
    unfolding  $\Phi\text{-def}$  by simp

  from  $assms(1,2)$   $n$  have  $d > 0$  by (intro  $\text{Nat.gr0I}$ ) auto
  from  $\text{induced-modulus-altdef1 } assms(1) \langle d > 0 \rangle as\text{-im}$ 
    have  $b$ :  $(\forall a \ b. \text{coprime } a \ n \wedge \text{coprime } b \ n \wedge$ 
       $[a = b] \ (\text{mod } d) \longrightarrow \chi \ a = \chi \ b)$  by blast

  have  $\Phi\text{-periodic}$ :  $\forall a. \Phi \ (a + d) = \Phi \ a$ 
proof
  fix  $a$ 
  have  $\text{gcd } (a+d) \ d = \text{gcd } a \ d$  by auto
  then have  $\text{cop}$ :  $\text{coprime } (a+d) \ d = \text{coprime } a \ d$ 
    using  $\text{coprime-iff-gcd-eq-1}$  by presburger
  show  $\Phi \ (a + d) = \Phi \ a$ 
proof (cases  $\text{coprime } a \ d$ )
  case  $\text{True}$ 
    from  $\text{True cop}$  have  $\text{cop-ad}$ :  $\text{coprime } (a+d) \ d$  by blast
    have  $p1$ :  $[f \ (a+d) = f \ a] \ (\text{mod } d)$ 
      using  $m\text{-prop}(1)[of \ a+d, \ OF \ \text{cop-ad}]$ 
       $m\text{-prop}(1)[of \ a, \ OF \ \text{True}]$  by (simp add:  $\text{unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def}$ )
    have  $p2$ :  $\text{coprime } (f \ (a+d)) \ n \ \text{coprime } (f \ a) \ n$ 
      using  $m\text{-prop}(2)[of \ a+d, \ OF \ \text{cop-ad}]$ 
       $m\text{-prop}(2)[of \ a, \ OF \ \text{True}]$  by blast+

```

```

    from b p1 p2 have eq:  $\chi (f (a + d)) = \chi (f a)$  by blast
  show ?thesis
    unfolding  $\Phi$ -def
    by (subst cop,simp,safe, simp add: eq)
next
  case False
  then show ?thesis unfolding  $\Phi$ -def by (subst cop,simp)
qed
qed

have  $\Phi$ -mult:  $\forall a b. a \in \text{totatives } d \longrightarrow$ 
   $b \in \text{totatives } d \longrightarrow \Phi (a * b) = \Phi a * \Phi b$ 
proof (safe)
  fix a b
  assume  $a \in \text{totatives } d$   $b \in \text{totatives } d$ 
  consider (ab)  $\text{coprime } a d \wedge \text{coprime } b d$  |
    (a)  $\text{coprime } a d \wedge \neg \text{coprime } b d$  |
    (b)  $\text{coprime } b d \wedge \neg \text{coprime } a d$  |
    (n)  $\neg \text{coprime } a d \wedge \neg \text{coprime } b d$  by blast
  then show  $\Phi (a * b) = \Phi a * \Phi b$ 
  proof cases
    case ab
    then have c-ab:
       $\text{coprime } (a*b) d \text{ coprime } a d \text{ coprime } b d$  by simp+
    then have p1:  $[f (a * b) = a * b] \pmod d \text{ coprime } (f (a * b)) n$ 
      using m-prop[of a*b, OF c-ab(1)] by simp+
    moreover have p2:  $[f a = a] \pmod d \text{ coprime } (f a) n$ 
       $[f b = b] \pmod d \text{ coprime } (f b) n$ 
      using m-prop[of a, OF c-ab(2)]
      m-prop[of b, OF c-ab(3)] by simp+
    have p1s:  $[f (a * b) = (f a) * (f b)] \pmod d$ 
  proof -
    have  $[f (a * b) = a * b] \pmod d$ 
      using p1(1) by blast
    moreover have  $[a * b = f(a) * f(b)] \pmod d$ 
      using p2(1) p2(3) by (simp add: cong-mult cong-sym)
    ultimately show ?thesis using cong-trans by blast
  qed
  have p2s:  $\text{coprime } (f a * f b) n$ 
    using p2(2) p2(4) by simp
  have  $\chi (f (a * b)) = \chi (f a * f b)$ 
    using p1s p2s p1(2) b by blast
  then show ?thesis
    unfolding  $\Phi$ -def by (simp add: c-ab)
  qed (simp-all add:  $\Phi$ -def)
qed

have d-gr-1:  $d > 1$  using assms(1,2)
  using  $\langle 0 < d \rangle$  by linarith
show  $\exists \Phi. d\text{character } d \Phi \wedge (\forall n. \chi n = \Phi n * \chi_1 n)$ 

```

```

proof (standard,rule conjI)
  show dcharacter d  $\Phi$ 
    unfolding dcharacter-def residues-nat-def dcharacter-axioms-def
    using d-gr-1  $\Phi$ -def f-def  $\Phi$ -mult  $\Phi$ -1  $\Phi$ -periodic by simp
  show  $\forall n. \chi n = \Phi n * \chi_1 n$ 
proof
  fix k
  show  $\chi k = \Phi k * \chi_1 k$ 
  proof (cases coprime k n)
    case True
    then have coprime k d using assms(1) by auto
    then have  $\Phi(k) = \chi(f k)$  using  $\Phi$ -def by simp
    moreover have  $[f k = k] \text{ (mod } d)$ 
      using m-prop[OF  $\langle \text{coprime } k d \rangle$ ] by simp
    moreover have  $\chi_1 k = 1$ 
      using assms(3) principal-dchar-def  $\langle \text{coprime } k n \rangle$  by auto
    ultimately show  $\chi(k) = \Phi(k) * \chi_1(k)$ 
  proof -
    assume  $\Phi k = \chi(f k) [f k = k] \text{ (mod } d) \chi_1 k = 1$ 
    then have  $\chi k = \chi(f k)$ 
      using  $\langle \text{local.induced-modulus } d \rangle$  induced-modulus-altdef1 assms(1)  $\langle d \rangle$ 
    0>
      True  $\langle \text{coprime } k d \rangle$  m-prop(2) by auto
    also have  $\dots = \Phi k$  by (simp add:  $\langle \Phi k = \chi(f k) \rangle$ )
    also have  $\dots = \Phi k * \chi_1 k$  by (simp add:  $\langle \chi_1 k = 1 \rangle$ )
    finally show ?thesis by simp
  qed
next
  case False
  hence  $\chi k = 0$ 
    using eq-zero-iff by blast
  moreover have  $\chi_1 k = 0$ 
    using False assms(3) principal-dchar-def by simp
  ultimately show ?thesis by simp
qed
qed
qed
next
  assume  $(\exists \Phi. \text{dcharacter } d \ \Phi \wedge (\forall k. \chi k = \Phi k * \chi_1 k))$ 
  then obtain  $\Phi$  where 1: dcharacter d  $\Phi$   $(\forall k. \chi k = \Phi k * \chi_1 k)$  by blast
  show induced-modulus d
    unfolding induced-modulus-def
  proof (rule conjI,fact,safe)
    fix k
    assume 2: coprime k n  $[k = 1] \text{ (mod } d)$ 
    then have  $\chi_1 k = 1$ 
      by (simp add:  $\chi_1$ -def)
    moreover have  $\Phi k = 1$ 
      by (metis 1(1) 2(2) One-nat-def dcharacter.Suc-0 dcharacter.cong)

```

```

    ultimately show  $\chi \ k = 1$  using 1(2) by simp
  qed
qed

```

7.4 The conductor of a character

```

context dcharacter
begin

```

```

definition conductor = Min {d. induced-modulus d}

```

```

lemma conductor-fin: finite {d. induced-modulus d}
proof -
  let ?A = {d. induced-modulus d}
  have ?A  $\subseteq$  {d. d dvd n}
    unfolding induced-modulus-def by blast
  moreover have finite {d. d dvd n} using n by simp
  ultimately show finite ?A using finite-subset by auto
qed

```

```

lemma conductor-induced: induced-modulus conductor
proof -
  have {d. induced-modulus d}  $\neq$  {} using induced-modulus-modulus by blast
  then show induced-modulus conductor
    using Min-in[OF conductor-fin ] conductor-def by auto
qed

```

```

lemma conductor-le-iff: conductor  $\leq$  a  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists d \leq a$ . induced-modulus d)
  unfolding conductor-def using conductor-fin induced-modulus-modulus by (subst
Min-le-iff) auto

```

```

lemma conductor-ge-iff: conductor  $\geq$  a  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\forall d$ . induced-modulus d  $\longrightarrow$  d  $\geq$  a)
  unfolding conductor-def using conductor-fin induced-modulus-modulus by (subst
Min-ge-iff) auto

```

```

lemma conductor-leI: induced-modulus d  $\implies$  conductor  $\leq$  d
  by (subst conductor-le-iff) auto

```

```

lemma conductor-geI: ( $\bigwedge d$ . induced-modulus d  $\implies$  d  $\geq$  a)  $\implies$  conductor  $\geq$  a
  by (subst conductor-ge-iff) auto

```

```

lemma conductor-dvd: conductor dvd n
  using conductor-induced unfolding induced-modulus-def by blast

```

```

lemma conductor-le-modulus: conductor  $\leq$  n
  using conductor-dvd by (rule dvd-imp-le) (use n in auto)

```

```

lemma conductor-gr-0: conductor  $>$  0
  unfolding conductor-def using zero-not-ind-mod

```

```

using conductor-def conductor-induced neq0-conv by fastforce

lemma conductor-eq-1-iff-principal: conductor = 1  $\longleftrightarrow$   $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
proof
  assume conductor = 1
  then have induced-modulus 1
    using conductor-induced by auto
  then show  $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
    using one-induced-iff-principal by blast
next
  assume  $\chi$  = principal-dchar n
  then have im-1: induced-modulus 1 using one-induced-iff-principal by auto
  show conductor = 1
  proof -
    have conductor  $\leq$  1
      using conductor-fin Min-le[OF conductor-fin,simplified,OF im-1]
      by (simp add: conductor-def[symmetric])
    then show ?thesis using conductor-gr-0 by auto
  qed
qed

lemma conductor-principal [simp]:  $\chi$  = principal-dchar n  $\implies$  conductor = 1
  by (subst conductor-eq-1-iff-principal)

lemma nonprimitive-imp-conductor-less:
  assumes  $\neg$ primitive-dchar n  $\chi$ 
  shows conductor < n
  proof -
    obtain d where d: induced-modulus d d < n
      using primitive-dchar-iff assms by blast
    from d(1) have conductor  $\leq$  d
      by (rule conductor-leI)
    also have ... < n by fact
    finally show ?thesis .
  qed

lemma (in nonprimitive-dchar) conductor-less-modulus: conductor < n
  using nonprimitive-imp-conductor-less nonprimitive by metis

Theorem 8.18

theorem primitive-principal-form:
  defines  $\chi_1 \equiv$  principal-dchar n
  assumes  $\chi \neq$  principal-dchar n
  shows  $\exists \Phi. \text{primitive-dchar conductor } \Phi \wedge (\forall n. \chi(n) = \Phi(n) * \chi_1(n))$ 
  proof -

    from n have n-pos: n > 0 by simp
    define d where d = conductor
    have induced: induced-modulus d

```

```

    unfolding d-def using conductor-induced by blast
  then have d-not-1:  $d \neq 1$ 
    using one-induced-iff-principal assms by auto
  hence d-gt-1:  $d > 1$  using conductor-gr-0 by (auto simp: d-def)

  from induced obtain  $\Phi$  where  $\Phi$ -def:  $d\text{-character } d \ \Phi \wedge (\forall n. \chi \ n = \Phi \ n * \chi_1 \ n)$ 
  using d-not-1
    by (subst (asm) induced-modulus-altdef2) (auto simp: d-def conductor-dvd  $\chi_1$ -def)
  have phi-dchars:  $\Phi \in d\text{-characters } d$  using  $\Phi$ -def dcharacters-def by auto

  interpret  $\Phi$ :  $d\text{-character } d \text{ residue-mult-group } d \ \Phi$ 
    using  $\Phi$ -def by auto

  have  $\Phi$ -prim:  $\text{primitive-dchar } d \ \Phi$ 
  proof (rule ccontr)
    assume  $\neg \text{primitive-dchar } d \ \Phi$ 
    then obtain  $q$  where
      1:  $q \text{ dvd } d \wedge q < d \wedge \Phi.\text{induced-modulus } q$ 
      unfolding  $\Phi.\text{induced-modulus-def } \Phi.\text{primitive-dchar-iff}$  by blast
    then have 2:  $\text{induced-modulus } q$ 
    proof -
      {fix  $k$ 
        assume mod-1:  $[k = 1] \pmod{q}$ 
        assume cop:  $\text{coprime } k \ n$ 
        have  $\chi(k) = \Phi(k) * \chi_1(k)$  using  $\Phi$ -def by auto
        also have  $\dots = \Phi(k)$ 
          using cop by (simp add: assms principal-dchar-def)
        also have  $\dots = 1$ 
          using 1 mod-1  $\Phi.\text{induced-modulus-def}$ 
             $\langle \text{induced-modulus } d \rangle \text{ cop induced-modulus-def}$  by auto
        finally have  $\chi(k) = 1$  by blast}
    then show ?thesis
      using induced-modulus-def 1  $\langle \text{induced-modulus } d \rangle$  by auto
  qed

  from 1 have  $q < d$  by simp
  moreover have  $d \leq q$  unfolding d-def
    by (intro conductor-leI) fact
  ultimately show False by linarith
qed

  from  $\Phi$ -def  $\Phi$ -prim d-def phi-dchars show ?thesis by blast
qed

definition primitive-extension ::  $\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{complex}$  where
  primitive-extension =

```


(*SOME* Φ . *primitive-dchar conductor* $\Phi \wedge (\forall k. \chi k = \Phi k * \text{principal-dchar } n k)$)

lemma

assumes *nonprincipal*: $\chi \neq \text{principal-dchar } n$

shows *primitive-primitive-extension*: *primitive-dchar conductor primitive-extension*

and *principal-decomposition*: $\chi k = \text{primitive-extension } k * \text{principal-dchar } n k$

proof –

note $*$ = *someI-ex*[*OF primitive-principal-form*[*OF nonprincipal*], *folded primitive-extension-def*]

from $*$ **show** *primitive-dchar conductor primitive-extension* **by** *blast*

from $*$ **show** $\chi k = \text{primitive-extension } k * \text{principal-dchar } n k$ **by** *blast*

qed

end

7.5 The connection between primitivity and separability

lemma *residue-mult-group-coset*:

fixes $m\ n\ m1\ m2 :: \text{nat}$ **and** $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$ **and** $G\ H$

defines $G \equiv \text{residue-mult-group } n$

defines $H \equiv \text{residue-mult-group } m$

defines $f \equiv (\lambda k. k \bmod m)$

assumes $b \in (\text{rcosets}_G \text{ kernel } G\ H\ f)$

assumes $m1 \in b\ m2 \in b$

assumes $n > 1\ m \text{ dvd } n$

shows $m1 \bmod m = m2 \bmod m$

proof –

have $h-1: 1_H = 1$

using *assms*(2) **unfolding** *residue-mult-group-def totatives-def* **by** *simp*

from *assms*(4)

obtain $a :: \text{nat}$ **where** *cos-expr*: $b = (\text{kernel } G\ H\ f) \#>_G a \wedge a \in \text{carrier } G$

using *RCOSETS-def*[*of* $G\ \text{kernel } G\ H\ f$] **by** *blast*

then have *cop*: *coprime* $a\ n$

using *assms*(1) **unfolding** *residue-mult-group-def totatives-def* **by** *auto*

obtain a' **where** $[a * a' = 1] \text{ (mod } n)$

using *cong-solve-coprime-nat*[*OF cop*] **by** *auto*

then have $a\text{-inv}$: $(a * a') \bmod n = 1$

using *unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def*[*of* $a * a' = 1\ n$] *assms*(7) **by** *simp*

have $m1 \in (\bigcup h \in \text{kernel } G\ H\ f. \{h \otimes_G a\})$

$m2 \in (\bigcup h \in \text{kernel } G\ H\ f. \{h \otimes_G a\})$

using *r-coset-def*[*of* $G\ \text{kernel } G\ H\ f\ a$] *cos-expr assms*(5,6) **by** *blast+*

then have $m1 \in (\bigcup h \in \text{kernel } G\ H\ f. \{(h * a) \bmod n\})$

$m2 \in (\bigcup h \in \text{kernel } G\ H\ f. \{(h * a) \bmod n\})$

using *assms*(1) **unfolding** *residue-mult-group-def*[*of* n] **by** *auto*

then obtain $m1' \ m2'$ **where**

$m\text{-expr}: m1 = (m1' * a) \bmod n \wedge m1' \in \text{kernel } G \ H \ f$

$m2 = (m2' * a) \bmod n \wedge m2' \in \text{kernel } G \ H \ f$

by *blast*

have $eq\text{-}1: m1 \bmod m = a \bmod m$

proof –

have $m1 \bmod m = ((m1' * a) \bmod n) \bmod m$ **using** $m\text{-expr}$ **by** *blast*

also have $\dots = (m1' * a) \bmod m$

using *euclidean-semiring-cancel-class.mod-mod-cancel* *assms*(8) **by** *blast*

also have $\dots = (m1' \bmod m) * (a \bmod m) \bmod m$

by (*simp add: mod-mult-eq*)

also have $\dots = (a \bmod m) \bmod m$

using $m\text{-expr}(1)$ *h-1* **unfolding** *kernel-def* *assms*(3) **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = a \bmod m$ **by** *auto*

finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*

qed

have $eq\text{-}2: m2 \bmod m = a \bmod m$

proof –

have $m2 \bmod m = ((m2' * a) \bmod n) \bmod m$ **using** $m\text{-expr}$ **by** *blast*

also have $\dots = (m2' * a) \bmod m$

using *euclidean-semiring-cancel-class.mod-mod-cancel* *assms*(8) **by** *blast*

also have $\dots = (m2' \bmod m) * (a \bmod m) \bmod m$

by (*simp add: mod-mult-eq*)

also have $\dots = (a \bmod m) \bmod m$

using $m\text{-expr}(2)$ *h-1* **unfolding** *kernel-def* *assms*(3) **by** *simp*

also have $\dots = a \bmod m$ **by** *auto*

finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*

qed

from $eq\text{-}1$ $eq\text{-}2$ **show** *?thesis* **by** *argo*

qed

lemma *residue-mult-group-kernel-partition*:

fixes $m \ n :: \text{nat}$ **and** $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$ **and** $G \ H$

defines $G \equiv \text{residue-mult-group } n$

defines $H \equiv \text{residue-mult-group } m$

defines $f \equiv (\lambda k. k \bmod m)$

assumes $m > 1 \ n > 0 \ m \text{ dvd } n$

shows *partition* (*carrier* G) (*rcosets* $_G$ *kernel* $G \ H \ f$)

and $\text{card } (\text{rcosets}_G \text{ kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{totient } m$

and $\text{card } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{totient } n \text{ div totient } m$

and $b \in (\text{rcosets}_G \text{ kernel } G \ H \ f) \implies b \neq \{\}$

and $b \in (\text{rcosets}_G \text{ kernel } G \ H \ f) \implies \text{card } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{card } b$

and *bij-betw* ($\lambda b. (\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ` } b)))$ (*rcosets* $_G$ *kernel* $G \ H \ f$) (*carrier* H)

proof –

have $1 < m$ **by** *fact*

also have $m \leq n$ **using** $\langle n > 0 \rangle \langle m \text{ dvd } n \rangle$ **by** (*intro dvd-imp-le*) *auto*

```

finally have  $n > 1$  .
note  $mn = \langle m > 1 \rangle \langle n > 1 \rangle \langle m \text{ dvd } n \rangle \langle m \leq n \rangle$ 

interpret  $n$ : residues-nat  $n$   $G$ 
  using  $mn$  by unfold-locales (auto simp: assms)
interpret  $m$ : residues-nat  $m$   $H$ 
  using  $mn$  by unfold-locales (auto simp: assms)

from  $mn$  have subset:  $f \text{ ' carrier } G \subseteq \text{carrier } H$ 
  by (auto simp: assms(1-3) residue-mult-group-def totatives-def
    dest: coprime-common-divisor-nat intro!: Nat.gr0I)
moreover have super-set:  $\text{carrier } H \subseteq f \text{ ' carrier } G$ 
proof safe
  fix  $k$  assume  $k \in \text{carrier } H$ 
  hence  $k$ :  $k > 0$   $k \leq m$  coprime  $k$   $m$ 
    by (auto simp: assms(2) residue-mult-group-def totatives-def)
  from  $mn$   $\langle k \in \text{carrier } H \rangle$  have  $k < m$ 
    by (simp add: totatives-less assms(2) residue-mult-group-def)
  define  $P$  where  $P = \{p \in \text{prime-factors } n. \neg(p \text{ dvd } m)\}$ 
  define  $a$  where  $a = \prod P$ 
  have [simp]:  $a \neq 0$  by (auto simp: P-def a-def intro!: Nat.gr0I)
  have [simp]: prime-factors  $a = P$ 
  proof -
    have prime-factors  $a = \text{set-mset } (\text{sum prime-factorization } P)$ 
      unfolding a-def using  $mn$ 
      by (subst prime-factorization-prod)
      (auto simp: P-def prime-factors-dvd prime-gt-0-nat)
    also have sum prime-factorization  $P = (\sum p \in P. \{\#p\# \})$ 
      using  $mn$  by (intro sum.cong) (auto simp: P-def prime-factorization-prime
prime-factors-dvd)
    finally show ?thesis by (simp add: P-def)
  qed

from  $mn$  have coprime  $m$   $a$ 
  by (subst coprime-iff-prime-factors-disjoint) (auto simp: P-def)
hence  $\exists x. [x = k] \text{ (mod } m) \wedge [x = 1] \text{ (mod } a)$ 
  by (intro binary-chinese-remainder-nat)
then obtain  $x$  where  $x$ :  $[x = k] \text{ (mod } m) [x = 1] \text{ (mod } a)$ 
  by auto
from  $x(1)$   $mn$   $k$  have [simp]:  $x \neq 0$ 
  by (meson  $\langle k < m \rangle$  cong-0-iff cong-sym-eq nat-dvd-not-less)

from  $x(2)$  have coprime  $x$   $a$ 
  using cong-imp-coprime cong-sym by force
hence coprime  $x$   $(a * m)$ 
  using  $k$  cong-imp-coprime[OF cong-sym[OF  $x(1)$ ]] by auto
also have ?this  $\longleftrightarrow$  coprime  $x$   $n$  using  $mn$ 
  by (intro coprime-cong-prime-factors)
  (auto simp: prime-factors-product P-def in-prime-factors-iff)

```

```

finally have  $x \bmod n \in \text{totatives } n$ 
  using  $mn$  by (auto simp: totatives-def intro!: Nat.gr0I)

moreover have  $f (x \bmod n) = k$ 
  using  $x(1) \ k \ mn \ \langle k < m \rangle$  by (auto simp: assms(3) unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def
mod-mod-cancel)
  ultimately show  $k \in f^{-1} \text{carrier } G$ 
    by (auto simp: assms(1) residue-mult-group-def)
qed

ultimately have  $\text{image-}eq: f^{-1} \text{carrier } G = \text{carrier } H$  by blast

have [simp]:  $f (k \otimes_G l) = f k \otimes_H f l$  if  $k \in \text{carrier } G \ l \in \text{carrier } G$  for  $k \ l$ 
  using  $that \ mn$  by (auto simp: assms(1-3) residue-mult-group-def totatives-def
mod-mod-cancel mod-mult-eq)

interpret  $f$ : group-hom  $G \ H \ f$ 
  using subset by unfold-locales (auto simp: hom-def)

show  $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda b. (\text{the-elem } (f^{-1} b))) (\text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f) (\text{carrier } H)$ 
  unfolding  $\text{bij-betw-def}$ 
proof
  show  $\text{inj-on } (\lambda b. (\text{the-elem } (f^{-1} b))) (\text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f)$ 
    using  $f.\text{FactGroup-inj-on}$  unfolding  $\text{FactGroup-def}$  by auto
  have  $eq: f^{-1} \text{carrier } G = \text{carrier } H$ 
    using subset super-set by blast
  show  $(\lambda b. \text{the-elem } (f^{-1} b))^{-1} (\text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{carrier } H$ 
    using  $f.\text{FactGroup-onto}[OF \ eq]$  unfolding  $\text{FactGroup-def}$  by simp
qed

show  $\text{partition } (\text{carrier } G) (\text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f)$ 
proof
  show  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{carrier } G \implies \exists ! b. b \in \text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f \wedge a \in b$ 
proof –
  fix  $a$ 
  assume  $a\text{-in}: a \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  show  $\exists ! b. b \in \text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f \wedge a \in b$ 
proof –

    have  $\exists b. b \in \text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f \wedge a \in b$ 
      using  $a\text{-in} \ n.\text{rcosets-part-}G[OF \ f.\text{subgroup-kernel}]$ 
      by blast
    then show ?thesis
      using  $\text{group.rcos-disjoint}[OF \ n.\text{is-group } f.\text{subgroup-kernel}]$ 
      by (auto simp: disjoint-def)
  qed
qed
next
  show  $\bigwedge b. b \in \text{rcosets}_G \text{kernel } G \ H \ f \implies b \subseteq \text{carrier } G$ 

```

```

    using n.rcosets-part-G f.subgroup-kernel by auto
  qed

  have lagr: card (carrier G) = card (rcosetsG kernel G H f) * card (kernel G H
f)
    using group.lagrange-finite[OF n.is-group n.fin f.subgroup-kernel] Coset.order-def[of
G] by argo
    have k-size: card (kernel G H f) > 0
    using f.subgroup-kernel finite-subset n.subgroupE(1) n.subgroupE(2) by fast-
force
    have G-size: card (carrier G) = totient n
    using n.order Coset.order-def[of G] by simp
    have H-size: totient m = card (carrier H)
    using n.order Coset.order-def[of H] by simp
    also have ... = card (carrier (G Mod kernel G H f))
    using f.FactGroup-iso[OF image-eq] card-image f.FactGroup-inj-on f.FactGroup-onto
image-eq by fastforce
    also have ... = card (carrier G) div card (kernel G H f)
    proof -
      have card (carrier (G Mod kernel G H f)) =
        card (rcosetsG kernel G H f)
      unfolding FactGroup-def by simp
      also have ... = card (carrier G) div card (kernel G H f)
      by (simp add: lagr k-size)
      finally show ?thesis by blast
    qed
    also have ... = totient n div card (kernel G H f)
    using G-size by argo
    finally have eq: totient m = totient n div card (kernel G H f) by simp
    show card (kernel G H f) = totient n div totient m
    proof -
      have totient m ≠ 0
      using totient-0-iff[of m] assms(4) by blast
      have card (kernel G H f) dvd totient n
      using lagr ⟨card (carrier G) = totient n⟩ by auto
      have totient m * card (kernel G H f) = totient n
      unfolding eq using ⟨card (kernel G H f) dvd totient n⟩ by auto
      have totient n div totient m = totient m * card (kernel G H f) div totient m
      using ⟨totient m * card (kernel G H f) = totient n⟩ by auto
      also have ... = card (kernel G H f)
      using nonzero-mult-div-cancel-left[OF ⟨totient m ≠ 0⟩] by blast
      finally show ?thesis by auto
    qed

  show card (rcosetsG kernel G H f) = totient m
  proof -
    have H-size: totient m = card (carrier H)
    using n.order Coset.order-def[of H] by simp

```

also have $\dots = \text{card } (\text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } \text{kernel } G \ H \ f))$
using $f.\text{FactGroup-iso}[OF \ \text{image-eq}] \ \text{card-image } f.\text{FactGroup-inj-on } f.\text{FactGroup-onto}$
 image-eq **by** fastforce
also have $\text{card } (\text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } \text{kernel } G \ H \ f)) =$
 $\text{card } (\text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f)$
unfolding FactGroup-def **by** simp
finally show $\text{card } (\text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{totient } m$
by argo
qed

assume $b \in \text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f$
then show $b \neq \{\}$
proof –
have $\text{card } b = \text{card } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ f)$
using $\langle b \in \text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f \rangle \ f.\text{subgroup-kernel } n.\text{card-rcosets-equal}$
 $n.\text{subgroupE}(1)$ **by** auto
then have $\text{card } b > 0$
by $(\text{simp add: } k\text{-size})$
then show $?thesis$ **by** auto
qed

assume $b\text{-cos}: b \in \text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f$
show $\text{card } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ f) = \text{card } b$
using $\text{group.card-rcosets-equal}[OF \ n.\text{is-group } b\text{-cos}]$
 $f.\text{subgroup-kernel } \text{subgroup.subset}$ **by** blast
qed

lemma $\text{primitive-iff-separable-lemma}$:
assumes $\text{prod}: (\forall n. \chi \ n = \Phi \ n * \chi_1 \ n) \wedge \text{primitive-dchar } d \ \Phi$
assumes $\langle d > 1 \rangle \langle 0 < k \rangle \langle d \ \text{dvd } k \rangle \langle k > 1 \rangle$
shows $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \Phi(m) * \text{unity-root } d \ m) =$
 $(\text{totient } k \ \text{div } \text{totient } d) * (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..d\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ d. \Phi(m) * \text{unity-root } d \ m)$

proof –
from assms **interpret** $\Phi: \text{primitive-dchar } d \ \text{residue-mult-group } d \ \Phi$
by auto
define G **where** $G = \text{residue-mult-group } k$
define H **where** $H = \text{residue-mult-group } d$
define f **where** $f = (\lambda t. t \ \text{mod } d)$

from $\text{residue-mult-group-kernel-partition}(2)[OF \ \langle d > 1 \rangle \langle 0 < k \rangle \langle d \ \text{dvd } k \rangle]$
have $\text{fin-cosets}: \text{finite } (\text{rcosets}_G \ \text{kernel } G \ H \ f)$
using $\langle 1 < d \rangle \ \text{card.infinite}$ **by** $(\text{fastforce simp: } G\text{-def } H\text{-def } f\text{-def})$

have $\text{fin-G}: \text{finite } (\text{carrier } G)$
unfolding $G\text{-def}$ $\text{residue-mult-group-def}$ **by** simp

have $\text{eq}: (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \Phi(m) * \text{unity-root } d \ m) =$

```

      (∑ m | m ∈ carrier G . Φ(m) * unity-root d m)
    unfolding residue-mult-group-def totatives-def G-def
    by (rule sum.cong,auto)
    also have ... = sum (λm. Φ(m) * unity-root d m) (carrier G) by simp
    also have eq': ... = sum (sum (λm. Φ m * unity-root d (int m))) (rcosets_G
kernel G H f)
      by (rule disjoint-sum [symmetric])
      (use fin-G fin-cosets residue-mult-group-kernel-partition(1)[OF <d > 1> <k >
0> <d dvd k>] in
        <auto simp: G-def H-def f-def>)
    also have ... =
      (∑ b ∈ (rcosets_G kernel G H f) . (∑ m ∈ b. Φ m * unity-root d (int m))) by
simp
    finally have 1: (∑ m | m ∈ {1..k} ∧ coprime m k. Φ(m) * unity-root d m) =
      (∑ b ∈ (rcosets_G kernel G H f) . (∑ m ∈ b. Φ m * unity-root d
(int m)))
      using eq eq' by auto
    have eq''': ... =
      (∑ b ∈ (rcosets_G kernel G H f) . (totient k div totient d) * (Φ (the-elem (f ‘
b)) * unity-root d (int (the-elem (f ‘ b))))))
    proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
      fix b
      assume b-in: b ∈ (rcosets_G kernel G H f)
      note b-not-empty = residue-mult-group-kernel-partition(4)
        [OF <d > 1> <0 < k> <d dvd k> b-in[unfolded G-def H-def
f-def]]
      {
        fix m1 m2
        assume m-in: m1 ∈ b m2 ∈ b
        have m-mod: m1 mod d = m2 mod d
          using residue-mult-group-coset[OF b-in[unfolded G-def H-def f-def] m-in <k
> 1> <d dvd k>]
          by blast
        } note m-mod = this
      {
        fix m1 m2
        assume m-in: m1 ∈ b m2 ∈ b
        have Φ m1 * unity-root d (int m1) = Φ m2 * unity-root d (int m2)
          proof -
            have Φ-periodic: periodic-arithmetic Φ d using Φ.dir-periodic-arithmetic by
blast
            have 1: Φ m1 = Φ m2
              using mod-periodic-arithmetic[OF <periodic-arithmetic Φ d> m-mod[OF
m-in]] by simp
            have 2: unity-root d m1 = unity-root d m2
              using m-mod[OF m-in] by (intro unity-root-cong) (auto simp: unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def
simp flip: zmod-int)
            from 1 2 show ?thesis by simp
          }
      }
    }

```

```

    qed
  } note all-eq-in-coset = this

  from all-eq-in-coset b-not-empty
  obtain l where l-prop:  $l \in b \wedge (\forall y \in b. \Phi \ y * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ y) =$ 
     $\Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l))$  by blast

  have  $(\sum m \in b. \Phi \ m * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ m)) =$ 
     $((\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l)))$ 
  proof -
    have  $(\sum m \in b. \Phi \ m * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ m)) =$ 
       $(\sum m \in b. \Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l))$ 
      by (rule sum.cong,simp) (use all-eq-in-coset l-prop in blast)
    also have  $\dots = \text{card } b * \Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l)$ 
      by simp
    also have  $\dots = (\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * \Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l)$ 
      using residue-mult-group-kernel-partition(3)[OF  $\langle d > 1 \rangle \langle 0 < k \rangle \langle d \text{ dvd } k \rangle$ ]
      residue-mult-group-kernel-partition(5)
      [OF  $\langle d > 1 \rangle \langle 0 < k \rangle \langle d \text{ dvd } k \rangle$  b-in [unfolded G-def H-def f-def]]
    by argo
  finally have 2:
     $(\sum m \in b. \Phi \ m * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ m)) =$ 
     $(\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * \Phi \ l * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ l)$ 
    by blast
  from b-not-empty 2 show ?thesis by auto
  qed
  also have  $\dots = ((\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\Phi \ (\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b)) * \text{unity-root } d$ 
     $(int \ (\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b))))$ 
  proof -
    have foral:  $(\bigwedge y. y \in b \implies f \ y = f \ l)$ 
      using m-mod l-prop unfolding f-def by blast
    have eq:  $\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b) = f \ l$ 
      by (simp add: b-not-empty foral the-elem-image-unique)
    have per: periodic-arithmetic  $\Phi \ d$  using prod  $\Phi$ .dir-periodic-arithmetic by
    blast
    show ?thesis
      unfolding eq using mod-periodic-arithmetic[OF per, of l mod d l]
      by (auto simp: f-def unity-root-mod zmod-int)
  qed
  finally show  $(\sum m \in b. \Phi \ m * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ m)) =$ 
     $((\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\Phi \ (\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b)) * \text{unity-root } d \ (int$ 
     $(\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b))))$ 
    by blast
  qed
  have  $\dots =$ 
     $(\sum b \in (\text{rcosets}_G \text{ kernel } G \ H \ f) . (\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\Phi \ (\text{the-elem}$ 
     $(f \text{ ‘ } b)) * \text{unity-root } d \ (int \ (\text{the-elem } (f \text{ ‘ } b))))$ 
    by blast

```


also have eq'' :
 $\dots = (\sum h \in \text{carrier } H . (\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\Phi(h) * \text{unity-root } d \text{ (int } (h))))$
unfolding $H\text{-def } G\text{-def } f\text{-def}$
by (*rule* $\text{sum.reindex-bij-betw}[\text{OF residue-mult-group-kernel-partition}(6)[\text{OF } \langle d > 1 \rangle \langle 0 < k \rangle \langle d \text{ dvd } k \rangle]]$)
finally have 2: $(\sum m \mid m \in \{1..k\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ k. \Phi(m) * \text{unity-root } d \ m) = (\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\sum h \in \text{carrier } H . (\Phi(h) * \text{unity-root } d \text{ (int } (h))))$
using 1 **by** (*simp add: eq'' eq''' sum-distrib-left*)
also have $\dots = (\text{totient } k \text{ div totient } d) * (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..d\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ d . \Phi(m) * \text{unity-root } d \text{ (int } (m))))$
unfolding $H\text{-def residue-mult-group-def}$ **by** (*simp add: totatives-def Suc-le-eq*)
finally show *?thesis* **by** *simp*
qed

Theorem 8.19

theorem (*in* $d\text{character}$) *primitive-iff-separable*:
 $\text{primitive-dchar } n \ \chi \longleftrightarrow (\forall k > 0. \text{separable } k)$
proof (*cases* $\chi = \text{principal-dchar } n$)
case *True*
thus *?thesis*
using *principal-not-primitive principal-not-totally-separable* **by** *auto*
next
case *False*
note *nonprincipal = this*
show *?thesis*
proof
assume *primitive-dchar* $n \ \chi$
then interpret A : *primitive-dchar* n *residue-mult-group* $n \ \chi$ **by** *auto*
show $(\forall k. k > 0 \longrightarrow \text{separable } k)$
using $n.A.\text{primitive-encoding}(2)$ **by** *blast*
next
assume *tot-separable*: $\forall k > 0. \text{separable } k$
{
assume *as*: $\neg \text{primitive-dchar } n \ \chi$
have $\exists r. r \neq 0 \wedge \neg \text{coprime } r \ n \wedge \text{gauss-sum } r \neq 0$
proof –
from n **have** $n > 0$ **by** *simp*
define d **where** $d = \text{conductor}$
have $d > 0$ **unfolding** $d\text{-def}$ **using** *conductor-gr-0* .
then have $d > 1$ **using** *nonprincipal d-def conductor-eq-1-iff-principal* **by** *auto*
have $d < n$ **unfolding** $d\text{-def}$ **using** *nonprimitive-imp-conductor-less* $[\text{OF } as]$
.
have $d \text{ dvd } n$ **unfolding** $d\text{-def}$ **using** *conductor-dvd* **by** *blast*
define r **where** $r = n \text{ div } d$
have $0: r \neq 0$ **unfolding** $r\text{-def}$
using $\langle 0 < n \rangle \langle d \text{ dvd } n \rangle \text{dvd-div-gt0}$ **by** *auto*

```

have gcd r n > 1
  unfolding r-def
proof -
  have n div d > 1 using ⟨1 < n⟩ ⟨d < n⟩ ⟨d dvd n⟩ by auto
  have n div d dvd n using ⟨d dvd n⟩ by force
  have gcd (n div d) n = n div d using gcd-nat.absorb1[OF ⟨n div d dvd
n⟩] by blast
  then show 1 < gcd (n div d) n using ⟨n div d > 1⟩ by argo
qed
then have 1: ¬ coprime r n by auto
define χ₁ where χ₁ = principal-dchar n
from primitive-principal-form[OF nonprincipal]
obtain Φ where
  prod: (∀ k. χ(k) = Φ(k)*χ₁(k)) ∧ primitive-dchar d Φ
  using d-def unfolding χ₁-def by blast
then have prod1: (∀ k. χ(k) = Φ(k)*χ₁(k)) primitive-dchar d Φ by blast+
then interpret Φ: primitive-dchar d residue-mult-group d Φ
  by auto

have gauss-sum r = (∑ m = 1..n . χ(m) * unity-root n (m*r))
  unfolding gauss-sum-def by blast
also have ... = (∑ m = 1..n . Φ(m)*χ₁(m) * unity-root n (m*r))
  by (rule sum.cong,auto simp add: prod)
also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..n} ∧ coprime m n. Φ(m)*χ₁(m) * unity-root
n (m*r))
  by (intro sum.mono-neutral-right) (auto simp: χ₁-def principal-dchar-def)
also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..n} ∧ coprime m n. Φ(m)*χ₁(m) * unity-root
d m)
proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
  fix x
  assume x ∈ {m ∈ {1..n}. coprime m n}
  have unity-root n (int (x * r)) = unity-root d (int x)
    using unity-div-num[OF ⟨n > 0⟩ ⟨d > 0⟩ ⟨d dvd n⟩]
    by (simp add: algebra-simps r-def)
  then show Φ x * χ₁ x * unity-root n (int (x * r)) =
    Φ x * χ₁ x * unity-root d (int x) by auto
qed
also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..n} ∧ coprime m n. Φ(m) * unity-root d
m)
  by (rule sum.cong,auto simp add: χ₁-def principal-dchar-def)
also have ... = (totient n div totient d) * (∑ m | m ∈ {1..d} ∧ coprime
m d. Φ(m) * unity-root d m)
  using primitive-iff-separable-lemma[OF prod ⟨d > 1⟩ ⟨n > 0⟩ ⟨d dvd n⟩
⟨n > 1⟩] by blast
also have ... = (totient n div totient d) * Φ.gauss-sum 1
proof -
  have Φ.gauss-sum 1 = (∑ m = 1..d . Φ m * unity-root d (int (m)))
    by (simp add: Φ.gauss-sum-def)
  also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..d} . Φ m * unity-root d (int m))

```

```

    by (rule sum.cong,auto)
    also have ... = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..d} ∧ coprime m d. Φ(m) * unity-root d
m)
    by (rule sum.mono-neutral-right) (use Φ.eq-zero in auto)
    finally have Φ.gauss-sum 1 = (∑ m | m ∈ {1..d} ∧ coprime m d. Φ(m)
* unity-root d m)
    by blast
    then show ?thesis by metis
qed
finally have g-expr: gauss-sum r = (totient n div totient d) * Φ.gauss-sum
1
    by blast
have t-non-0: totient n div totient d ≠ 0
    by (simp add: ⟨0 < n⟩ ⟨d dvd n⟩ dvd-div-gt0 totient-dvd)
have (norm (Φ.gauss-sum 1))2 = d
    using Φ.primitive-encoding(3) by simp
then have Φ.gauss-sum 1 ≠ 0
    using ⟨0 < d⟩ by auto
then have 2: gauss-sum r ≠ 0
    using g-expr t-non-0 by auto
from 0 1 2 show ∃ r. r ≠ 0 ∧ ¬ coprime r n ∧ gauss-sum r ≠ 0
    by blast
qed
}
note contr = this

show primitive-dchar n χ
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume ¬ primitive-dchar n χ
  then obtain r where 1: r ≠ 0 ∧ ¬ coprime r n ∧ gauss-sum r ≠ 0
    using contr by blast
  from global-separability-condition tot-separable
  have 2: (∀ k>0. ¬ coprime k n ⟶ gauss-sum k = 0)
    by blast
  from 1 2 show False by blast
qed
qed
qed

```

Theorem 8.20

```

theorem (in primitive-dchar) fourier-primitive:
  includes no vec-lambda-syntax
  fixes τ :: complex
  defines τ ≡ gauss-sum 1 / sqrt n
  shows χ m = τ / sqrt n * (∑ k=1..n. cnj (χ k) * unity-root n (-m*k))
  and norm τ = 1
proof -
  have chi-not-principal: χ ≠ principal-dchar n
    using principal-not-totally-separable primitive-encoding(2) by blast

```

```

then have case-0:  $(\sum_{k=1..n} \chi k) = 0$ 
proof -
  have  $\text{sum } \chi \{0..n-1\} = \text{sum } \chi \{1..n\}$ 
  using periodic-arithmetic-sum-periodic-arithmetic-shift[OF dir-periodic-arithmetic,
of 1] n
  by auto
  also have  $\{0..n-1\} = \{..<n\}$ 
  using n by auto
  finally show  $(\sum_{n=1..n} \chi n) = 0$ 
  using sum-dcharacter-block chi-not-principal by simp
qed

have  $\chi m =$ 
 $(\sum_{k=1..n} 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{gauss-sum-int } (- \text{int } k) * \text{unity-root } n (\text{int } (m * k)))$ 
using dcharacter-fourier-expansion[of m] by auto
also have  $\dots = (\sum_{k=1..n} 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{gauss-sum } (\text{nat } ((- k) \bmod n)) * \text{unity-root } n (\text{int } (m * k)))$ 
by (auto simp: gauss-sum-int-conv-gauss-sum)
also have  $\dots = (\sum_{k=1..n} 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{cnj } (\chi (\text{nat } ((- k) \bmod n))) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{unity-root } n (\text{int } (m * k)))$ 
proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
  fix k
  assume  $k \in \{1..n\}$ 
  have  $\text{gauss-sum } (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)) = \text{cnj } (\chi (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n))) * \text{gauss-sum } 1$ 
  proof (cases  $\text{nat } ((- k) \bmod n) > 0$ )
    case True
    then show ?thesis
      using mp[OF spec[OF primitive-encoding(2)] True]
      unfolding separable-def by auto
  next
    case False
    then have nat-0:  $\text{nat } ((- k) \bmod n) = 0$  by blast
    show ?thesis
    proof -
      have  $\text{gauss-sum } (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)) = \text{gauss-sum } 0$ 
      using nat-0 by argo
      also have  $\dots = (\sum_{m=1..n} \chi m)$ 
      unfolding gauss-sum-def by (rule sum.cong) auto
      also have  $\dots = 0$  using case-0 by blast
      finally have 1:  $\text{gauss-sum } (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)) = 0$ 
      by blast

      have 2:  $\text{cnj } (\chi (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n))) = 0$ 
      using nat-0 zero-eq-0 by simp
      show ?thesis using 1 2 by simp
    qed
  qed
qed

```

```

    qed
    then show 1 / of-nat n * gauss-sum (nat (- int k mod int n)) * unity-root n
(int (m * k)) =
      1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int k mod int n))) * gauss-sum 1 *
unity-root n (int (m * k))
    by auto
    qed
    also have ... = (∑ k = 1..n. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int k mod int n)))
*
      gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (int (m * (nat (int k mod int n)))))
proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
  fix x
  assume x ∈ {1..n}
  have unity-root n (m * x) = unity-root n (m * x mod n)
  using unity-root-mod-nat[of n m*x] by (simp add: nat-mod-as-int)
  also have ... = unity-root n (m * (x mod n))
  by (metis mod-mult-right-eq nat-mod-as-int unity-root-mod-nat)
  finally have unity-root n (m * x) = unity-root n (m * (x mod n)) by blast
  then show 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int x mod int n))) *
    gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (int (m * x)) =
    1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int x mod int n))) * gauss-sum 1 *
    unity-root n (int (m * nat (int x mod int n)))
  by (simp add: nat-mod-as-int)
  qed
  also have ... = (∑ k = 0..n-1. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ k) * gauss-sum 1 *
unity-root n (- int (m * k)))
  proof -
    have b: bij-betw (λk. nat((-k) mod n)) {1..n} {0..n-1}
    unfolding bij-betw-def
  proof
    show inj-on (λk. nat (- int k mod int n)) {1..n}
    unfolding inj-on-def
  proof (safe)
    fix x y
    assume a1: x ∈ {1..n} y ∈ {1..n}
    assume a2: nat (- x mod n) = nat (- y mod n)
    then have (- x) mod n = - y mod n
    using n eq-nat-nat-iff by auto
    then have [-int x = - int y] (mod n)
    using unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def by blast
    then have [x = y] (mod n)
    by (simp add: cong-int-iff cong-minus-minus-iff)
    then have cong: x mod n = y mod n using unique-euclidean-semiring-class.cong-def
  by blast
    then show x = y
  proof (cases x = n)
    case True then show ?thesis using cong a1(2) by auto
  next
    case False

```

```

    then have  $x \bmod n = x$  using  $a1(1)$  by auto
    then have  $y \neq n$  using  $a1(1)$  local.cong by fastforce
    then have  $y \bmod n = y$  using  $a1(2)$  by auto
    then show  $?thesis$  using  $\langle x \bmod n = x \rangle$  cong by linarith
  qed
qed
show  $(\lambda k. \text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)) \text{ ' } \{1..n\} = \{0..n - 1\}$ 
  unfolding image-def
proof
  let  $?A = \{y. \exists x \in \{1..n\}. y = \text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)\}$ 
  let  $?B = \{0..n - 1\}$ 
  show  $?A \subseteq ?B$ 
proof
  fix  $y$ 
  assume  $y \in \{y. \exists x \in \{1..n\}. y = \text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)\}$ 
  then obtain  $x$  where  $x \in \{1..n\} \wedge y = \text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)$  by blast
  then show  $y \in \{0..n - 1\}$  by (simp add: nat-le-iff of-nat-diff)
qed
show  $?A \supseteq ?B$ 
proof
  fix  $x$ 
  assume  $1: x \in \{0..n-1\}$ 
  then have  $n - x \in \{1..n\}$ 
    using  $n$  by auto
  have  $x = \text{nat } (- \text{int } (n-x) \bmod \text{int } n)$ 
proof -
  have  $\text{nat } (- \text{int } (n-x) \bmod \text{int } n) = \text{nat } (\text{int } x) \bmod \text{int } n$ 
    apply (simp add: int-ops(6), rule conjI)
    using  $\langle n - x \in \{1..n\} \rangle$  by force+
  also have  $\dots = x$ 
    using  $1$   $n$  by auto
  finally show  $?thesis$  by presburger
qed
then show  $x \in \{y. \exists x \in \{1..n\}. y = \text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)\}$ 
  using  $\langle n - x \in \{1..n\} \rangle$  by blast
qed
qed
qed
show  $?thesis$ 
proof -
  have  $1: (\sum k = 1..n. 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{cnj } (\chi (\text{nat } (- \text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)))) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{unity-root } n (\text{int } (m * \text{nat } (\text{int } k \bmod \text{int } n)))) =$ 
 $(\sum x = 1..n. 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{cnj } (\chi (\text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)))) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * \text{nat } (- \text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n))))$ 
proof (rule sum.cong, simp)
  fix  $x$ 
  have  $(\text{int } m * (\text{int } x \bmod \text{int } n)) \bmod n = (m*x) \bmod n$ 
    by (simp add: mod-mult-right-eq zmod-int)
  also have  $\dots = (- ((- \text{int } (m*x) \bmod n))) \bmod n$ 

```

```

      by (simp add: mod-minus-eq of-nat-mod)
      have (int m * (int x mod int n)) mod n = (- (int m * (- int x mod int
n))) mod n
      apply (subst mod-mult-right-eq, subst add.inverse-inverse[symmetric], subst
(5) add.inverse-inverse[symmetric])
      by (subst minus-mult-minus, subst mod-mult-right-eq[symmetric], auto)
    then have unity-root n (int m * (int x mod int n)) =
      unity-root n (- (int m * (- int x mod int n)))
    using unity-root-mod[of n int m * (int x mod int n)]
      unity-root-mod[of n - (int m * (- int x mod int n))] by argo
    then show 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int x mod int n))) *
      gauss-sum 1 *
      unity-root n (int (m * nat (int x mod int n))) =
      1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int x mod int n))) *
      gauss-sum 1 *
      unity-root n (- int (m * nat (- int x mod int n)))
    by clarsimp
  qed
  also have 2: (∑ x = 1..n. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int x mod int n))) *
    gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (- int (m * nat (- int x mod int n)))) =
    (∑ md = 0..n - 1. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ md) * gauss-sum 1 *
    unity-root n (- int (m * md)))
    using sum.reindex-bij-betw[OF b, of λmd. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ md) *
gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (- int (m * md))]
  by blast
  also have 3: ... = (∑ k = 0..n - 1.
    1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ k) * gauss-sum 1 *
    unity-root n (- int (m * k))) by blast
  finally have (∑ k = 1..n. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ (nat (- int k mod int n))) *
    gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (int (m * nat (int k mod int n)))) =
    (∑ k = 0..n - 1.
    1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ k) * gauss-sum 1 *
    unity-root n (- int (m * k))) using 1 2 3 by argo
  then show ?thesis by blast
qed
qed
also have ... = (∑ k = 1..n.
  1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ k) * gauss-sum 1 *
  unity-root n (- int (m * k)))
proof -
  let ?f = (λk. 1 / of-nat n * cnj (χ k) * gauss-sum 1 * unity-root n (- int (m
* k)))
  have ?f 0 = 0
  using zero-eq-0 by auto
  have ?f n = 0
  using zero-eq-0 mod-periodic-arithmetic[OF dir-periodic-arithmetic, of n 0]
  by simp
  have (∑ n = 0..n - 1. ?f n) = (∑ n = 1..n - 1. ?f n)
  using sum-shift-lb-Suc0-0[of ?f, OF ‹?f 0 = 0›]

```

```

    by auto
  also have ... = ( $\sum n = 1..n. ?f n$ )
  proof (rule sum.mono-neutral-left,simp,simp,safe)
    fix i
    assume  $i \in \{1..n\}$   $i \notin \{1..n - 1\}$ 
    then have  $i = n$  using  $n$  by auto
    then show  $1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{cnj } (\chi i) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * i)) = 0$ 
      using  $\langle ?f n = 0 \rangle$  by blast
    qed
  finally show ?thesis by blast
  qed
  also have ... = ( $\sum k = 1..n. (\tau / \text{sqrt } n) * \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * k)))$ )
  proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
    fix x
    assume  $x \in \{1..n\}$ 
    have  $\tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) = 1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{gauss-sum } 1$ 
    proof -
      have  $\tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) = \text{gauss-sum } 1 / \text{sqrt } n / \text{sqrt } n$ 
      using assms by auto
      also have ... =  $\text{gauss-sum } 1 / (\text{sqrt } n * \text{sqrt } n)$ 
      by (subst divide-divide-eq-left,subst of-real-mult,blast)
      also have ... =  $\text{gauss-sum } 1 / n$ 
      using real-sqrt-mult-self by simp
      finally show ?thesis by simp
    qed
    then show
       $1 / \text{of-nat } n * \text{cnj } (\chi x) * \text{gauss-sum } 1 * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * x)) =$ 
       $(\tau / \text{sqrt } n) * \text{cnj } (\chi x) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * x))$  by simp
    qed
    also have ... =  $\tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) *$ 
       $(\sum k = 1..n. \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * k)))$ 
    proof -
      have  $(\sum k = 1..n. \tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) * \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * k)))$ 
      =
       $(\sum k = 1..n. \tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) * (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * k))))$ 
      by (rule sum.cong,simp, simp add: algebra-simps)
      also have ... =  $\tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) * (\sum k = 1..n. \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } (m * k)))$ 
      by (rule sum-distrib-left[symmetric])
      finally show ?thesis by blast
    qed
  finally show  $\chi m = (\tau / \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n)) *$ 
     $(\sum k=1..n. \text{cnj } (\chi k) * \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } m * \text{int } k))$  by simp

  have 1: norm (gauss-sum 1) = sqrt n

```



```

    using gauss-sum-1-mod-square-eq-k[OF primitive-encoding(2)]
    by (simp add: cmod-def)
  from assms have 2: norm  $\tau$  = norm (gauss-sum 1) / |sqrt n|
    by (simp add: norm-divide)
  show norm  $\tau$  = 1 using 1 2 n by simp
qed

unbundle vec-lambda-syntax

end

```

8 The Pólya–Vinogradov Inequality

```

theory Polya-Vinogradov
imports
  Gauss-Sums
  Dirichlet-Series.Divisor-Count
begin

unbundle no vec-lambda-syntax

```

8.1 The case of primitive characters

We first prove a stronger variant of the Pólya–Vinogradov inequality for primitive characters. The fully general variant will then simply be a corollary of this. First, we need some bounds on logarithms, exponentials, and the harmonic numbers:

```

lemma exp-1-less-powr:
  assumes  $x > (0::real)$ 
  shows  $\exp 1 < (1 + 1 / x)^{\text{powr } (x+1)}$ 
proof -
  have  $1 < (x + 1) * \ln ((x + 1) / x)$  (is - < ?f x)
proof (rule DERIV-neg-imp-decreasing-at-top[where ?f = ?f])
  fix t assume  $t: x \leq t$ 
  have (?f has-field-derivative  $(\ln (1 + 1 / t) - 1 / t)$ ) (at t)
    using t assms by (auto intro!: derivative-eq-intros simp:divide-simps)
  moreover have  $\ln (1 + 1 / t) - 1 / t < 0$ 
    using ln-add-one-self-less-self[of 1 / t] t assms by auto
  ultimately show  $\exists y. ((\lambda t. (t + 1) * \ln ((t + 1) / t)) \text{ has-real-derivative } y)$ 
    (at t)  $\wedge y < 0$ 
    by blast
qed real-asymp
thus  $\exp 1 < (1 + 1 / x)^{\text{powr } (x + 1)}$ 
  using assms by (simp add: powr-def field-simps)
qed

```

```

lemma harm-aux-ineq-1:
  fixes  $k :: real$ 

```

```

    assumes  $k > 1$ 
    shows  $1 / k < \ln (1 + 1 / (k - 1))$ 
  proof -
    have  $k-1 > 0 \ \langle k > 0 \rangle$  using assms by simp+
    from exp-1-less-powr[OF  $\langle k-1 > 0 \rangle$ ]
    have eless:  $\exp 1 < (1 + 1 / (k - 1)) \text{ powr } k$  by simp
    then have n-z:  $(1 + 1 / (k - 1)) \text{ powr } k > 0$ 
      using assms not-exp-less-zero by auto

    have  $(1::\text{real}) = \ln (\exp(1))$  using ln-exp by auto
    also have  $\dots < \ln ((1 + 1 / (k - 1)) \text{ powr } k)$ 
      by (meson eless dual-order.strict-trans exp-gt-zero ln-less-cancel-iff)
    also have  $\dots = k * \ln (1 + 1 / (k - 1))$ 
      using ln-powr n-z by simp
    finally have  $1 < k * \ln (1 + 1 / (k - 1))$ 
      by blast
    then show ?thesis using assms by (simp add: field-simps)
  qed

lemma harm-aux-ineq-2-lemma:
  assumes  $x \geq (0::\text{real})$ 
  shows  $1 < (x + 1) * \ln (1 + 2 / (2 * x + 1))$ 
  proof -
    have  $0 < \ln (1+2/(2*x+1)) - 1 / (x + 1)$  (is - < ?f x)
    proof (rule DERIV-neg-imp-decreasing-at-top[where ?f = ?f])
      fix t assume t:  $x \leq t$ 
      from assms t have  $3 + 8 * t + 4 * t^2 > 0$ 
        by (intro add-pos-nonneg) auto
      hence *:  $3 + 8 * t + 4 * t^2 \neq 0$ 
        by auto
      have (?f has-field-derivative  $(-1 / ((1 + t)^2 * (3 + 8 * t + 4 * t^2)))$ )
        (at t)
      apply (insert assms t *, (rule derivative-eq-intros refl | simp add: add-pos-pos)+)
      apply (auto simp: divide-simps)
      apply (auto simp: algebra-simps power2-eq-square)
      done
      moreover have  $-1 / ((1 + t)^2 * (3 + 8 * t + 4 * t^2)) < 0$ 
        using t assms by (intro divide-neg-pos mult-pos-pos add-pos-nonneg) auto
      ultimately show  $\exists y. (\text{?f has-real-derivative } y) \ (\text{at } t) \wedge y < 0$ 
        by blast
    qed real-asymp
    thus  $1 < (x + 1) * \ln (1+2/(2*x+1))$ 
      using assms by (simp add: field-simps)
  qed

lemma harm-aux-ineq-2:
  fixes  $k :: \text{real}$ 
  assumes  $k \geq 1$ 
  shows  $1 / (k + 1) < \ln (1 + 2 / (2 * k + 1))$ 

```

```

proof –
  have  $k > 0$  using assms by auto
  have  $1 < (k + 1) * \ln (1 + 2 / (2 * k + 1))$ 
    using harm-aux-ineq-2-lemma assms by simp
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp add:  $\langle 0 < k \rangle$  add-pos-pos mult.commute mult-imp-div-pos-less)
qed

lemma nat-0-1-induct [case-names 0 1 step]:
  assumes  $P\ 0\ P\ 1\ \bigwedge n. n \geq 1 \implies P\ n \implies P\ (Suc\ n)$ 
  shows  $P\ n$ 
proof (induction n rule: less-induct)
  case (less n)
  show ?case
    using assms( $\mathcal{I}$ )[OF - less.IH[of  $n - 1$ ]]
    by (cases  $n \leq 1$ )
      (insert assms( $1-2$ ),auto simp: eval-nat-numeral le-Suc-eq)
qed

lemma harm-less-ln:
  fixes m :: nat
  assumes  $m > 0$ 
  shows  $\text{harm } m < \ln (2 * m + 1)$ 
  using assms
proof (induct m rule: nat-0-1-induct)
  case 0
  then show ?case by blast
next
  case 1
  have  $\text{harm } 1 = (1::\text{real})$  unfolding harm-def by simp
  have  $\text{harm } 1 < \ln (3::\text{real})$ 
    by (subst  $\langle \text{harm } 1 = 1 \rangle$ ,subst ln3-gt-1,simp)
  then show ?case by simp
next
  case (step n)
  have  $\text{harm } (n+1) = \text{harm } n + 1/(n+1)$ 
    by ((subst Suc-eq-plus1 [symmetric])+,subst harm-Suc,subst inverse-eq-divide,blast)
  also have  $\dots < \ln (\text{real } (2 * n + 1)) + 1/(n+1)$ 
    using step( $1-2$ ) by auto
  also have  $\dots < \ln (\text{real } (2 * n + 1)) + \ln (1+2/(2*n+1))$ 
proof –
    from step(1) have  $\text{real } n \geq 1$  by simp
    have  $1 / \text{real } (n + 1) < \ln (1 + 2 / \text{real } (2 * n + 1))$ 
      using harm-aux-ineq-2[OF  $\langle 1 \leq (\text{real } n) \rangle$ ] by (simp add: add.commute)
    then show ?thesis by auto
qed
  also have  $\dots = \ln ((2 * n + 1) * (1+2/(2*n+1)))$ 
    by (auto simp add: ln-div divide-simps)
  also have  $\dots = \ln (2*(n+1)+1)$ 

```

```

proof –
  have  $(2 * n + 1) * (1 + 2 / (2 * n + 1)) = 2 * (n + 1) + 1$ 
  by (simp add: field-simps)
  then show ?thesis by presburger
qed
finally show ?case by simp
qed

```

Theorem 8.21

```

theorem (in primitive-dchar) polya-vinogradov-inequality-primitive:
  fixes  $x :: \text{nat}$ 
  shows  $\text{norm} (\sum m=1..x. \chi m) < \text{sqrt } n * \ln n$ 
proof –
  define  $\tau :: \text{complex}$  where  $\tau = \text{gauss-sum } 1 \text{ div sqrt } n$ 
  have  $\tau\text{-mod: norm } \tau = 1$  using fourier-primitive(2)
  by (simp add:  $\tau$ -def)
  {
    fix  $m$ 
    have  $\chi m = (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\sum k = 1..n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))$ 
    using fourier-primitive(1)[of m]  $\tau$ -def by blast}
    note chi-expr = this
    have  $(\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)) = (\sum m = 1..x. (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\sum k = 1..n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by (rule sum.cong[OF refl] (use chi-expr in blast))
    also have  $\dots = (\sum m = 1..x. (\sum k = 1..n. (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * ((\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by (rule sum.cong,simp,simp add: sum-distrib-left)
    also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..n. (\sum m = 1..x. (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * ((\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by (rule sum.swap)
    also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..n. (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by (rule sum.cong,simp,simp add: sum-distrib-left)
    also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..<n. (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    using  $n$  by (intro sum.mono-neutral-right) (auto intro: eq-zero)
    also have  $\dots = (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\sum k = 1..<n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by (simp add: sum-distrib-left)
    finally have  $(\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)) = (\tau \text{ div sqrt } n) * (\sum k = 1..<n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by blast
    hence  $\text{eq: sqrt } n * (\sum m=1..x. \chi(m)) = \tau * (\sum k=1..<n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m=1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
    by auto
    define  $f$  where  $f = (\lambda k. (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k)))$ 

    hence  $(\text{sqrt } n) * \text{norm}(\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)) = \text{norm}(\tau * (\sum k=1..<n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 

```

```

proof -
  have  $\text{norm}(\text{sqrt } n * (\sum m=1..x. \chi(m))) = \text{norm } (\text{sqrt } n) * \text{norm}((\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)))$ 
  by (simp add: norm-mult)
  also have  $\dots = (\text{sqrt } n) * \text{norm}((\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)))$ 
  by simp
  finally have  $1: \text{norm}((\text{sqrt } n) * (\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m))) = (\text{sqrt } n) * \text{norm}((\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)))$ 
  by blast
  then show ?thesis using eq by algebra
qed
  also have  $\dots = \text{norm } (\sum k = 1..<n. (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
  by (simp add: norm-mult  $\tau$ -mod)
  also have  $\dots \leq (\sum k = 1..<n. \text{norm } (\text{cnj } (\chi k) * (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
  using norm-sum by blast
  also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..<n. \text{norm } (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{norm}((\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
  by (rule sum.cong, simp, simp add: norm-mult)
  also have  $\dots \leq (\sum k = 1..<n. \text{norm}((\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*k))))$ 
proof -
  show ?thesis
proof (rule sum-mono)
  fix k
  assume  $k \in \{1..<n\}$ 
  define sum-aux  $:: \text{real}$  where  $\text{sum-aux} = \text{norm } (\sum m=1..x. \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } m * \text{int } k))$ 
  have  $\text{sum-aux} \geq 0$  unfolding sum-aux-def by auto
  have  $\text{norm } (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) \leq 1$  using norm-le-1 [of k] by simp
  then have  $\text{norm } (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{sum-aux} \leq 1 * \text{sum-aux}$ 
  using  $\langle \text{sum-aux} \geq 0 \rangle$  by (simp add: mult-left-le-one-le)
  then show  $\text{norm } (\text{cnj } (\chi k)) * \text{norm } (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } m * \text{int } k)) \leq \text{norm } (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (- \text{int } m * \text{int } k))$ 
  unfolding sum-aux-def by argo
qed
qed
  also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..<n. \text{norm}(f k))$ 
  using f-def by blast
  finally have  $24: (\text{sqrt } n) * \text{norm}(\sum m = 1..x. \chi(m)) \leq (\sum k = 1..<n. \text{norm}(f k))$ 
  by blast

{
  fix k  $:: \text{int}$ 
  have  $f(n-k) = \text{cnj}(f(k))$ 
  proof -
    have  $f(n-k) = (\sum m = 1..x. \text{unity-root } n (-m*(n-k)))$ 

```

```

    unfolding f-def by blast
  also have ... = (∑ m = 1..x. unity-root n (m*k))
  proof (rule sum.cong,simp)
    fix xa
    assume xa ∈ {1..x}
    have (k * int xa - int n * int xa) mod int n = (k * int xa - 0) mod int n
      by (intro mod-diff-cong) auto
    thus unity-root n (-int xa * (int n - k)) = unity-root n (int xa * k)
  by (metis left-diff-distrib diff-zero minus-diff-eq mult.commute unity-root-mod)
qed
also have ... = cnj(f(k))
proof -
  have cnj(f(k)) = cnj (∑ m = 1..x. unity-root n (- int m * k))
    unfolding f-def by blast
  also have cnj (∑ m = 1..x. unity-root n (- int m * k)) =
    (∑ m = 1..x. cnj(unity-root n (- int m * k)))
    by (rule cnj-sum)
  also have ... = (∑ m = 1..x. unity-root n (int m * k))
    by (intro sum.cong) (auto simp: unity-root-uminus)
  finally show ?thesis by auto
qed
finally show f(n-k) = cnj(f(k)) by blast
qed
hence norm(f(n-k)) = norm(cnj(f(k))) by simp
hence norm(f(n-k)) = norm(f(k)) by auto
}
note eq = this
have 25:
  odd n ⟹ (∑ k = 1..n - 1. norm (f (int k))) ≤
    2 * (∑ k = 1..(n-1) div 2. norm (f (int k)))
  even n ⟹ (∑ k = 1..n - 1. norm (f (int k))) ≤
    2 * (∑ k = 1..(n-2) div 2. norm (f (int k))) + norm(f(n div 2))
proof -
  assume odd n
  define g where g = (λk. norm (f k))
  have (n-1) div 2 = n div 2 using ‹odd n› n
    using div-mult-self1-is-m[OF pos2,of n-1]
    odd-two-times-div-two-nat[OF ‹odd n›] by linarith
  have (∑ i=1..n-1. g i) = (∑ i∈{1..n div 2} ∪ {n div 2 <..n-1}. g i)
    using n by (intro sum.cong,auto)
  also have ... = (∑ i∈{1..n div 2}. g i) + (∑ i∈{n div 2 <..n-1}. g i)
    by (subst sum.union-disjoint,auto)
  also have (∑ i∈{n div 2 <..n-1}. g i) = (∑ i∈{1..n - (n div 2 + 1)}. g (n
- i))
    by (rule sum.reindex-bij-witness[of - λi. n - i λi. n - i],auto)
  also have ... ≤ (∑ i∈{1..n div 2}. g (n - i))
    by (intro sum-mono2,simp,auto simp add: g-def)
  finally have 1: (∑ i=1..n-1. g i) ≤ (∑ i=1..n div 2. g i + g (n - i))
    by (simp add: sum.distrib)

```

```

have ( $\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. g \ i + g \ (n - i)$ ) = ( $\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. 2 * g \ i$ )
  unfolding g-def
  apply(rule sum.cong,simp)
  using eq int-ops(6) by force
also have ... =  $2 * (\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. g \ i)$ 
  by (rule sum-distrib-left[symmetric])
finally have 2: ( $\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. g \ i + g \ (n - i)$ ) =  $2 * (\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. g$ 
i)
  by blast
from 1 2 have ( $\sum i=1..n-1. g \ i$ )  $\leq 2 * (\sum i=1..n \text{ div } 2. g \ i)$  by algebra
then show ( $\sum n = 1..n - 1. \text{ norm } (f \ (int \ n))$ )  $\leq 2 * (\sum n = 1..(n-1) \text{ div}$ 
2.  $\text{ norm } (f \ (int \ n))$ )
  unfolding g-def  $\langle (n-1) \text{ div } 2 = n \text{ div } 2 \rangle$  by blast
next
assume even n
define g where  $g = (\lambda n. \text{ norm } (f \ (n)))$ 
have  $(n-2) \text{ div } 2 = n \text{ div } 2 - 1$  using  $\langle \text{even } n \rangle n$  by simp
have ( $\sum i=1..n-1. g \ i$ ) = ( $\sum i \in \{1..<n \text{ div } 2\} \cup \{n \text{ div } 2\} \cup \{n \text{ div } 2 <..n-1\}.$ 
g i)
  using n by (intro sum.cong,auto)
also have ... = ( $\sum i \in \{1..<n \text{ div } 2\}. g \ i$ ) + ( $\sum i \in \{n \text{ div } 2 <..n-1\}. g \ i$ ) +
g(n div 2)
  by (subst sum.union-disjoint,auto)
also have ( $\sum i \in \{n \text{ div } 2 <..n-1\}. g \ i$ ) = ( $\sum i \in \{1..n - (n \text{ div } 2 + 1)\}. g \ (n$ 
- i))
  by (rule sum.reindex-bij-witness[of -  $\lambda i. n - i$   $\lambda i. n - i$ ],auto)
also have ...  $\leq (\sum i \in \{1..<n \text{ div } 2\}. g \ (n - i))$ 
proof (intro sum-mono2,simp)
  have  $n - n \text{ div } 2 = n \text{ div } 2$  using  $\langle \text{even } n \rangle n$  by auto
  then have  $n - (n \text{ div } 2 + 1) < n \text{ div } 2$ 
    using n by (simp add: divide-simps)
  then show  $\{1..n - (n \text{ div } 2 + 1)\} \subseteq \{1..<n \text{ div } 2\}$  by fastforce
qed auto
finally have 1: ( $\sum i=1..n-1. g \ i$ )  $\leq (\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. g \ i + g \ (n - i)) +$ 
g(n div 2)
  by (simp add: sum.distrib)
have ( $\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. g \ i + g \ (n - i)$ ) = ( $\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. 2 * g \ i$ )
  unfolding g-def
  apply(rule sum.cong,simp)
  using eq int-ops(6) by force
also have ... =  $2 * (\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. g \ i)$ 
  by (rule sum-distrib-left[symmetric])
finally have 2: ( $\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. g \ i + g \ (n - i)$ ) =  $2 * (\sum i=1..<n \text{ div}$ 
2. g i)
  by blast
from 1 2 have 3: ( $\sum i=1..n-1. g \ i$ )  $\leq 2 * (\sum i=1..<n \text{ div } 2. g \ i) + g(n$ 
div 2) by algebra
then have ( $\sum i=1..n-1. g \ i$ )  $\leq 2 * (\sum i=1..(n-2) \text{ div } 2. g \ i) + g(n \text{ div}$ 
2)

```

```

proof -
  have  $\{1..<n \text{ div } 2\} = \{1..(n-2) \text{ div } 2\}$  by auto
  then have  $(\sum_{i=1..<n \text{ div } 2} g \ i) = (\sum_{i=1..(n-2) \text{ div } 2} g \ i)$ 
    by (rule sum.cong,simp)
  then show ?thesis using 3 by presburger
qed
  then show  $(\sum_{k=1..n-1} \text{norm } (f \ (int \ k))) \leq 2 * (\sum_{n=1..(n-2) \text{ div } 2} \text{norm } (f \ (int \ n))) + g(n \text{ div } 2)$ 
    unfolding g-def by blast
qed

```

```

{fix k :: int
assume  $1 \leq k \leq n \text{ div } 2$ 
have  $k \leq n - 1$ 
  using  $\langle k \leq n \text{ div } 2 \rangle n$  by linarith
define y where  $y = \text{unity-root } n \ (-k)$ 
define z where  $z = \exp \ (-(pi*k/n)*i)$ 
have  $z^2 = \exp \ (2*(-(pi*k/n)*i))$ 
  unfolding z-def using exp-double[symmetric] by blast
also have  $\dots = y$ 
  unfolding y-def unity-root-conv-exp by (simp add: algebra-simps)
finally have z-eq:  $y = z^2$  by blast
have z-not-0:  $z \neq 0$ 
  using z-eq by (simp add: z-def)

```

```

then have  $y \neq 1$ 
  using unity-root-eq-1-iff-int  $\langle 1 \leq k \rangle \langle k \leq n - 1 \rangle$  not-less
    unity-root-eq-1-iff-int y-def zdvd-not-zless by auto

```

```

have  $f(k) = (\sum_{m=1..x} y^m)$ 
  unfolding f-def y-def
  by (subst unity-root-pow, rule sum.cong,simp,simp add: algebra-simps)
also have sum:  $\dots = (\sum_{m=1..<x+1} y^m)$ 
  by (rule sum.cong,fastforce,simp)
also have  $\dots = (\sum_{m=0..<x+1} y^m) - 1$ 
  by (subst (2) sum.atLeast-Suc-lessThan) auto
also have  $\dots = (y^{x+1} - 1) \text{ div } (y - 1) - 1$ 
  using geometric-sum[OF  $\langle y \neq 1 \rangle$ , of  $x+1]$  by (simp add: atLeast0LessThan)

```

```

also have  $\dots = (y^{x+1} - 1 - (y-1)) \text{ div } (y - 1)$ 

```

```

proof -
  have  $y - 1 \neq 0$  using  $\langle y \neq 1 \rangle$  by simp
  show ?thesis
    using divide-diff-eq-iff[OF  $\langle y - 1 \neq 0 \rangle$ , of  $(y^{x+1} - 1) \ 1]$  by auto
qed
also have  $\dots = (y^{x+1} - y) \text{ div } (y - 1)$ 
  by (simp add: algebra-simps)
also have  $\dots = y * (y^x - 1) \text{ div } (y - 1)$ 

```



```

    by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  also have ... =  $z^2 * ((z^2)^x - 1) \operatorname{div} (z^2 - 1)$ 
    unfolding z-eq by blast
  also have ... =  $z^2 * (z^{2*x} - 1) \operatorname{div} (z^2 - 1)$ 
    by (subst power-mult[symmetric, of z 2 x],blast)
  also have ... =  $z^{(x+1)} * ((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))$ 
  proof -
    have  $z^x \neq 0$  using z-not-0 by auto
    have 1:  $z^{(2 * x) - 1} = z^x * (z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))$ 
      by (simp add: semiring-normalization-rules(36) right-inverse[OF ‹ $z^x \neq 0$ ›]
        right-diff-distrib')
    have 2:  $z^2 - 1 = z * (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))$ 
      by (simp add: right-diff-distrib' semiring-normalization-rules(29) right-inverse[OF ‹ $z \neq 0$ ›])
    have 3:  $z^2 * (z^x / z) = z^{(x+1)}$ 
  proof -
    have  $z^2 * (z^x / z) = z^2 * (z^x * \operatorname{inverse} z)$ 
      by (simp add: inverse-eq-divide)
    also have ... =  $z^{(x+1)}$ 
      by (simp add: algebra-simps power2-eq-square right-inverse[OF ‹ $z \neq 0$ ›])
    finally show ?thesis by blast
  qed
  have  $z^2 * (z^{(2 * x) - 1} / (z^2 - 1) =$ 
     $z^2 * (z^x * (z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z * (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z)))$ 
    by (subst 1, subst 2,blast)
  also have ... =  $(z^2 * (z^x / z)) * ((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))$ 
    by simp
  also have ... =  $z^{(x+1)} * ((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))$ 
    by (subst 3,simp)
  finally show ?thesis by simp
  qed
  finally have  $f(k) = z^{(x+1)} * ((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))$  by
blast

```

```

  then have  $\operatorname{norm}(f(k)) = \operatorname{norm}(z^{(x+1)} * (((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z))))$  by auto
  also have ... =  $\operatorname{norm}(z^{(x+1)}) * \operatorname{norm}(((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z)))$ 
    using norm-mult by blast
  also have ... =  $\operatorname{norm}(((z^x - \operatorname{inverse}(z^x))) / (z - \operatorname{inverse}(z)))$ 
  proof -
    have  $\operatorname{norm}(z) = 1$ 
      unfolding z-def by auto
    have  $\operatorname{norm}(z^{(x+1)}) = 1$ 
      by (subst norm-power,simp add: ‹ $\operatorname{norm}(z) = 1$ ›)
    then show ?thesis by simp
  qed

```

also have ... = norm((exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i)) div
 (exp (-(pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((pi*k/n)* i)))
 proof -
 have 1: z ^ x = exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i)
 unfolding z-def
 by (subst exp-of-nat-mult[symmetric], simp add: algebra-simps)
 have inverse (z ^ x) = inverse (exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i))
 using ⟨z ^ x = exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i)⟩ by auto
 also have ... = (exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i))
 by (simp add: exp-minus)
 finally have 2: inverse(z ^ x) = exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i) by simp
 have 3: inverse z = exp ((pi*k/n)* i)
 by (simp add: exp-minus z-def)
 show ?thesis using 1 2 3 z-def by simp
 qed
 also have ... = norm((sin (x*pi*k/n)) div (sin (pi*k/n)))
 proof -
 have num: (exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i)) = (-2*i* sin((x*pi*k/n)))

 proof -
 have 1: exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i) = cos(-(x*pi*k/n)) + i * sin(-(x*pi*k/n))
 exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i) = cos((x*pi*k/n)) + i * sin((x*pi*k/n))
 using Euler Im-complex-of-real Im-divide-of-nat Im-i-times Re-complex-of-real
 complex-Re-of-int complex-i-mult-minus exp-zero mult.assoc mult.commute
 by force+
 have (exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i)) =
 (cos(-(x*pi*k/n)) + i * sin(-(x*pi*k/n))) -
 (cos((x*pi*k/n)) + i * sin((x*pi*k/n)))
 using 1 by argo
 also have ... = -2*i* sin((x*pi*k/n)) by simp
 finally show ?thesis by blast
 qed

 have den: (exp (-(pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((pi*k/n)* i)) = -2*i* sin((pi*k/n))
 proof -
 have 1: exp (-(pi*k/n)* i) = cos(-(pi*k/n)) + i * sin(-(pi*k/n))
 exp ((pi*k/n)* i) = cos((pi*k/n)) + i * sin((pi*k/n))
 using Euler Im-complex-of-real Im-divide-of-nat Im-i-times Re-complex-of-real
 complex-Re-of-int complex-i-mult-minus exp-zero mult.assoc mult.commute
 by force+
 have (exp (-(pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((pi*k/n)* i)) =
 (cos(-(pi*k/n)) + i * sin(-(pi*k/n))) -
 (cos((pi*k/n)) + i * sin((pi*k/n)))
 using 1 by argo
 also have ... = -2*i* sin((pi*k/n)) by simp
 finally show ?thesis by blast
 qed

```

have norm((exp (-(x*pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((x*pi*k/n)* i)) div
  (exp (-(pi*k/n)* i) - exp ((pi*k/n)* i))) =
  norm((-2*i* sin((x*pi*k/n))) div (-2*i* sin((pi*k/n))))
  using num den by presburger
also have ... = norm(sin((x*pi*k/n)) div sin((pi*k/n)))
  by (simp add: norm-divide)
finally show ?thesis by blast
qed
also have ... = norm((sin (x*pi*k/n))) div norm((sin (pi*k/n)))
  by (simp add: norm-divide)
also have ... ≤ 1 div norm((sin (pi*k/n)))
proof -
  have norm((sin (pi*k/n))) ≥ 0 by simp
  have norm (sin (x*pi*k/n)) ≤ 1 by simp
  then show ?thesis
    using divide-right-mono[OF ‹norm (sin (x*pi*k/n)) ≤ 1› ‹norm((sin
(pi*k/n))) ≥ 0›]
    by blast
qed
finally have 26: norm(f(k)) ≤ 1 div norm((sin (pi*k/n)))
  by blast

{
  fix t
  assume t ≥ 0 t ≤ pi div 2
  then have t ∈ {0..pi div 2} by auto
  have convex-on {0..pi/2} (λx. -sin x)
    by (rule convex-on-realI[where f' = λx. -cos x])
    (auto intro!: derivative-eq-intros simp: cos-monotone-0-pi-le)
  from convex-onD-Icc'[OF this ‹t ∈ {0..pi div 2}›] have sin(t) ≥ (2 div pi)*t
by simp
}
note sin-ineq = this

have sin-ineq-inst: sin ((pi*k) / n) ≥ (2 * k) / n
proof -
  have pi / n ≥ 0 by simp
  have 1: (pi*k) / n ≥ 0 using ‹1 ≤ k› by auto
  have (pi*k)/n = (pi / n) * k by simp
  also have ... ≤ (pi / n) * (n / 2)
    using mult-left-mono[of k n / 2 pi / n]
    ‹k ≤ n div 2› ‹0 ≤ pi / real n› by linarith
  also have ... ≤ pi / 2
    by (simp add: divide-simps)
  finally have 2: (pi*k)/n ≤ pi / 2 by auto

  have (2 / pi) * (pi * k / n) ≤ sin((pi * k) / n)
    using sin-ineq[OF 1 2] by blast

```

```

    then show  $\sin((pi * k) / n) \geq (2*k) / n$ 
      by auto
  qed

from 26 have  $norm(f(k)) \leq 1 \div abs((\sin (pi*k/n)))$  by simp
also have  $\dots \leq 1 / abs((2*k) / n)$ 
proof -
  have  $\sin (pi*k/n) \geq (2*k) / n$  using sin-ineq-inst by simp
  moreover have  $(2*k) / n > 0$  using  $n \langle 1 \leq k \rangle$  by auto
  ultimately have  $abs((\sin (pi*k/n))) \geq abs((2*k)/n)$  by auto
  have  $abs((2*k)/n) > 0$  using  $\langle (2*k)/n > 0 \rangle$  by linarith
  then show  $1 \div abs((\sin (pi*k/n))) \leq 1 / abs(((2*k)/n))$ 
    using  $\langle abs((2*k)/n) > 0 \rangle \langle abs((\sin (pi*k/n))) \geq abs(((2*k)/n)) \rangle$ 
    by (intro frac-le) auto
  qed
also have  $\dots = n / (2*k)$  using  $\langle k \geq 1 \rangle$  by simp
finally have  $norm(f(k)) \leq n / (2*k)$  by blast
}
note ineq = this

have  $\sqrt{n} * norm(\sum \chi \{1..x\}) < n * \ln n$ 
proof (cases even n)
  case True
    have  $norm(f(n \div 2)) \leq 1$ 
    proof -
      have  $int(n \div 2) \geq 1$  using  $n \langle \text{even } n \rangle$  by auto
      show ?thesis
        using ineq[OF  $\langle int(n \div 2) \geq 1 \rangle$ ] True n by force
    qed
  from 24 have  $\sqrt{n} * norm(\sum \chi \{1..x\})$ 
     $\leq (\sum k = 1..<n. norm(f(int k)))$  by blast
  also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..n-1. norm(f(int k)))$ 
    by (intro sum.cong) auto
  also have  $\dots \leq 2 * (\sum k = 1..(n-2) \div 2. norm(f(int k))) + norm(f(n \div 2))$ 
    using 25(2)[OF True] by blast
  also have  $\dots \leq \text{real } n * (\sum k = 1..(n-2) \div 2. 1 / k) + norm(f(n \div 2))$ 
  proof -
    have  $(\sum k = 1..(n-2) \div 2. norm(f(int k))) \leq (\sum k = 1..(n-2) \div 2. \text{real } n \div (2*k))$ 
    proof (rule sum-mono)
      fix k
      assume  $k \in \{1..(n-2) \div 2\}$ 
      then have  $1 \leq int k$   $int k \leq n \div 2$  by auto
      show  $norm(f(int k)) \leq \text{real } n / (2*k)$ 
        using ineq[OF  $\langle 1 \leq int k \rangle \langle int k \leq n \div 2 \rangle$ ] by auto
    qed
  also have  $\dots = (\sum k = 1..(n-2) \div 2. (\text{real } n \div 2) * (1 / k))$ 

```

```

    by (rule sum.cong,auto)
  also have ... = (real n div 2) * (∑ k = 1..(n - 2) div 2. 1 / k)
    using sum-distrib-left[symmetric] by fast
  finally have (∑ k = 1..(n - 2) div 2. norm (f (int k))) ≤
    (real n div 2) * (∑ k = 1..(n - 2) div 2. 1 / k)
    by blast
  then show ?thesis by argo
qed
also have ... = real n * harm ((n - 2) div 2) + norm(f(n div 2))
  unfolding harm-def inverse-eq-divide by simp
also have ... < n * ln n
proof (cases n = 2)
  case True
  have real n * harm ((n - 2) div 2) + norm (f (int (n div 2))) ≤ 1
    using ⟨n = 2⟩ ⟨norm (f (int (n div 2))) ≤ 1⟩
    unfolding harm-def by simp
  moreover have real n * ln (real n) ≥ 4 / 3
    using ⟨n = 2⟩ ln2-ge-two-thirds by auto
  ultimately show ?thesis by argo
next
  case False
  have n > 3 using n ⟨n ≠ 2⟩ ⟨even n⟩ by auto
  then have (n-2) div 2 > 0 by simp
  then have harm ((n - 2) div 2) < ln (real (2 * ((n - 2) div 2) + 1))
    using harm-less-ln by blast
  also have ... = ln (real (n - 1))
    using ⟨even n⟩ ⟨n > 3⟩ by simp
  finally have 1: harm ((n - 2) div 2) < ln (real (n - 1))
    by blast
  then have real n * harm ((n - 2) div 2) < real n * ln (real (n - 1))
    using n by simp
  then have real n * harm ((n - 2) div 2) + norm (f (int (n div 2)))
    < real n * ln (real (n - 1)) + 1
    using ⟨norm (f (int (n div 2))) ≤ 1⟩ by argo
  also have ... = real n * ln (real (n - 1)) + real n * 1 / real n
    using n by auto
  also have ... < real n * ln (real (n - 1)) + real n * ln (1 + 1 / (real n -
1))
proof -
  have real n > 1 real n > 0 using n by simp+
  then have real n * (1 / real n) < real n * ln (1 + 1 / (real n - 1))
    by (intro mult-strict-left-mono harm-aux-ineq-1) auto
  then show ?thesis by auto
qed
also have ... = real n * ( ln (real (n - 1)) + ln (1 + 1 / (real n - 1)))
  by argo
also have ... = real n * ( ln (real (n - 1)) * (1 + 1 / (real n - 1)))
proof -
  have real (n - 1) > 0 1 + 1 / (real n - 1) > 0

```

```

    using n by (auto simp add: add-pos-nonneg)
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp add: ln-mult)
qed
also have ... = real n * ln n
  using n by (auto simp add: divide-simps)
finally show ?thesis by blast
qed
finally show ?thesis by blast
next
case False
from 24 have sqrt n * norm (sum  $\chi$  {1..x})  $\leq$  ( $\sum k=1..<n$ . norm (f (int k)))
  by blast
also have ... = ( $\sum k=1..n-1$ . norm (f (int k)))
  by (intro sum.cong) auto
also have ...  $\leq$  2 * ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . norm (f (int k)))
  using 25(1)[OF False] by blast
also have ...  $\leq$  real n * ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . 1 / k)
proof -
  have ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . norm (f (int k)))  $\leq$  ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . real n div (2*k))
  proof (rule sum-mono)
    fix k
    assume k  $\in$  {1..(n-1) div 2}
    then have 1  $\leq$  int k int k  $\leq$  n div 2 by auto
    show norm (f (int k))  $\leq$  real n / (2*k)
      using ineq[OF <1  $\leq$  int k> <int k  $\leq$  n div 2>] by auto
  qed
  also have ... = ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . (n / 2) * (1 / k))
    by (rule sum.cong, auto)
  also have ... = (n / 2) * ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . 1 / k)
    using sum-distrib-left[symmetric] by fast
  finally have ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . norm (f (int k)))  $\leq$ 
    (real n div 2) * ( $\sum k=1..(n-1) \text{ div } 2$ . 1 / k)
    by blast
  then show ?thesis by argo
qed
also have ... = real n * harm ((n-1) div 2)
  unfolding harm-def inverse-eq-divide by simp
also have ...  $<$  n * ln n
proof -
  have n  $>$  2 using n <odd n> by presburger
  then have (n-1) div 2  $>$  0 by auto
  then have harm ((n-1) div 2)  $<$  ln (real (2 * ((n-1) div 2) + 1))
    using harm-less-ln by blast
  also have ... = ln (real n) using <odd n> by simp
  finally show ?thesis using n by simp
qed

```

```

    finally show ?thesis by blast
qed

then have 1:  $\sqrt{n} * \text{norm} (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) < n * \ln n$ 
  by blast
show  $\text{norm} (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) < \sqrt{n} * \ln n$ 
proof -
  have 2:  $\text{norm} (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) * \sqrt{n} < n * \ln n$ 
    using 1 by argo
  have  $\sqrt{n} > 0$  using n by simp
  have 3:  $(n * \ln n) / \sqrt{n} = \sqrt{n} * \ln n$ 
    using n by (simp add: field-simps)
  show  $\text{norm} (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) < \sqrt{n} * \ln n$ 
    using mult-imp-less-div-pos[OF  $\langle \sqrt{n} > 0 \rangle$  2] 3 by argo
qed
qed

```

8.2 General case

We now first prove the inequality for the general case in terms of the divisor function:

theorem (in *dcharacter*) *polya-vinogradov-inequality-explicit*:
assumes *nonprincipal*: $\chi \neq \text{principal-dchar } n$
shows $\text{norm} (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) < \sqrt{\text{conductor}} * \ln \text{conductor} * \text{divisor-count} (n \text{ div conductor})$

```

proof -
  write primitive-extension ( $\langle \Phi \rangle$ )
  write conductor ( $\langle c \rangle$ )
  interpret  $\Phi$ : primitive-dchar c residue-mult-group c primitive-extension
    using primitive-primitive-extension nonprincipal by metis

  have *:  $k \leq x \text{ div } b \iff b * k \leq x$  if  $b > 0$  for  $b \ k$ 
    by (metis that antisym-conv div-le-mono div-mult-self1-is-m
        less-imp-le not-less times-div-less-eq-dividend)
  have **:  $a > 0$  if  $a \text{ dvd } n$  for  $a$ 
    using n that by (auto intro!: Nat.gr0I)

  from nonprincipal have  $(\sum_{m=1..x} \chi m) = (\sum m \mid m \in \{1..x\} \wedge \text{coprime } m \ n. \Phi m)$ 
    by (intro sum.mono-neutral-cong-right) (auto simp: eq-zero-iff principal-decomposition)
  also have  $\dots = (\sum_{m=1..x} \Phi m * (\sum_{d \mid d \text{ dvd } \text{gcd } m \ n. \text{moebius-mu } d})$ 
    by (subst sum-moebius-mu-divisors', intro sum.mono-neutral-cong-left)
        (auto simp: coprime-iff-gcd-eq-1 simp del: coprime-imp-gcd-eq-1)
  also have  $\dots = (\sum_{m=1..x} \sum_{d \mid d \text{ dvd } \text{gcd } m \ n. \Phi m * \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 
    by (simp add: sum-distrib-left)
  also have  $\dots = (\sum_{m=1..x} \sum_{d \mid d \text{ dvd } m \wedge d \text{ dvd } n. \Phi m * \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 
    by (intro sum.cong) auto
  also have  $\dots = (\sum_{(m, d) \in (\text{SIGMA } m: \{1..x\}. \{d. d \text{ dvd } m \wedge d \text{ dvd } n\}). \Phi m * \text{moebius-mu } d)$ 

```

```

    using n by (subst sum.Sigma) auto
    also have ... = (∑ (d, q) ∈ (SIGMA d: {d. d dvd n}. {1..x div d}). moebius-mu
d * Φ (d * q))
    by (intro sum.reindex-bij-witness[of - λ(d,q). (d * q, d) λ(m,d). (d, m div d)])
      (auto simp: * ** Suc-le-eq)
    also have ... = (∑ d | d dvd n. moebius-mu d * Φ d * (∑ q=1..x div d. Φ q))
    using n by (subst sum.Sigma [symmetric]) (auto simp: sum-distrib-left mult.assoc)
    finally have eq: (∑ m=1..x. χ m) = ... .

    have norm (∑ m=1..x. χ m) ≤
      (∑ d | d dvd n. norm (moebius-mu d * Φ d) * norm (∑ q=1..x div d. Φ
q))
    unfolding eq by (intro sum-norm-le) (simp add: norm-mult)
    also have ... < (∑ d | d dvd n. norm (moebius-mu d * Φ d) * (sqrt c * ln c))
      (is sum ?lhs - < sum ?rhs -)
    proof (rule sum-strict-mono-ex1)
      show ∀ d ∈ {d. d dvd n}. ?lhs d ≤ ?rhs d
      by (intro ballI mult-left-mono less-imp-le[OF Φ.polya-vinogradov-inequality-primitive])
    auto
      show ∃ d ∈ {d. d dvd n}. ?lhs d < ?rhs d
      by (intro bexI[of - 1] mult-strict-left-mono Φ.polya-vinogradov-inequality-primitive)
    auto
    qed (use n in auto)
    also have ... = sqrt c * ln c * (∑ d | d dvd n. norm (moebius-mu d * Φ d))
      by (simp add: sum-distrib-left sum-distrib-right mult-ac)
    also have (∑ d | d dvd n. norm (moebius-mu d * Φ d)) =
      (∑ d | d dvd n ∧ squarefree d ∧ coprime d c. 1)
    using n by (intro sum.mono-neutral-cong-right)
      (auto simp: moebius-mu-def Φ.eq-zero-iff norm-mult norm-power
Φ.norm)
    also have ... = card {d. d dvd n ∧ squarefree d ∧ coprime d c}
      by simp
    also have card {d. d dvd n ∧ squarefree d ∧ coprime d c} ≤ card {d. d dvd (n
div c)}
    proof (intro card-mono; safe?)
      show finite {d. d dvd (n div c)}
      using dvd-div-eq-0-iff[of c n] n conductor-dvd by (intro finite-divisors-nat)
    auto
    next
      fix d assume d: d dvd n squarefree d coprime d c
      hence d > 0 by (intro Nat.gr0I) auto
      show d dvd (n div c)
      proof (rule multiplicity-le-imp-dvd)
        fix p :: nat assume p: prime p
        show multiplicity p d ≤ multiplicity p (n div c)
        proof (cases p dvd d)
          assume p dvd d
          with d < d > 0 p have multiplicity p d = 1
          by (auto simp: squarefree-factorial-semiring' in-prime-factors-iff)

```



```

moreover have  $p \text{ dvd } (n \text{ div } c)$ 
proof -
  have  $p \text{ dvd } c * (n \text{ div } c)$ 
    using  $\langle p \text{ dvd } d \rangle \langle d \text{ dvd } n \rangle \text{ conductor-dvd}$  by auto
  moreover have  $\neg(p \text{ dvd } c)$ 
    using  $d \text{ p } \langle p \text{ dvd } d \rangle \text{ coprime-common-divisor not-prime-unit}$  by blast
  ultimately show  $p \text{ dvd } (n \text{ div } c)$ 
    using  $p \text{ prime-dvd-mult-iff}$  by blast
qed
hence  $\text{multiplicity } p \text{ } (n \text{ div } c) \geq 1$ 
  using  $n \text{ p conductor-dvd dvd-div-eq-0-iff[of } c \text{ } n]$ 
  by  $(\text{intro multiplicity-geI}) (\text{auto intro: Nat.gr0I})$ 
  ultimately show  $?thesis$  by simp
qed  $(\text{auto simp: not-dvd-imp-multiplicity-0})$ 
qed  $(\text{use } \langle d > 0 \rangle \text{ in simp-all})$ 
qed
also have  $\text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } (n \text{ div } c)\} = \text{divisor-count } (n \text{ div } c)$ 
  by  $(\text{simp add: divisor-count-def})$ 
finally show  $\text{norm } (\text{sum } \chi \{1..x\}) < \text{sqrt } c * \ln c * \text{divisor-count } (n \text{ div } c)$ 
  using  $\text{conductor-gr-0}$  by  $(\text{simp add: mult-left-mono})$ 
qed

```

Next, we obtain a suitable upper bound on the number of divisors of n :

lemma *divisor-count-upper-bound-aux:*

```

fixes  $n :: \text{nat}$ 
shows  $\text{divisor-count } n \leq 2 * \text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d \leq \text{sqrt } n\}$ 
proof  $(\text{cases } n = 0)$ 
  case False
    hence  $n: n > 0$  by simp
    have  $*$ :  $x > 0$  if  $x \text{ dvd } n$  for  $x$ 
      using that n by  $(\text{auto intro!: Nat.gr0I})$ 
    have  $**$ :  $\text{real } n = \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n) * \text{sqrt } (\text{real } n)$ 
      by simp
    have  $***$ :  $n < x * \text{sqrt } n \longleftrightarrow \text{sqrt } n < x * \text{sqrt } n < n \longleftrightarrow x < \text{sqrt } n$  for  $x$ 
      by  $(\text{metis } ** \text{ of-nat-0-less-iff mult-less-cancel-right-pos real-sqrt-gt-0-iff})+$ 

    have  $\text{divisor-count } n = \text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n\}$ 
      by  $(\text{simp add: divisor-count-def})$ 
    also have  $\{d. d \text{ dvd } n\} = \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d \leq \text{sqrt } n\} \cup \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d > \text{sqrt } n\}$ 
      by auto
    also have  $\text{card } \dots = \text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d \leq \text{sqrt } n\} + \text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d > \text{sqrt } n\}$ 
      using  $n$  by  $(\text{subst card-Un-disjoint}) \text{ auto}$ 
    also have  $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda d. n \text{ div } d) \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d > \text{sqrt } n\} \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d < \text{sqrt } n\}$ 
      using  $n$  by  $(\text{intro bij-betwI[of - - } \lambda d. n \text{ div } d])$ 
       $(\text{auto simp: Real.real-of-nat-div real-sqrt-divide field-simps } ***)$ 
    hence  $\text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d > \text{sqrt } n\} = \text{card } \{d. d \text{ dvd } n \wedge d < \text{sqrt } n\}$ 

```

```

    by (rule bij-betw-same-card)
  also have ... ≤ card {d. d dvd n ∧ d ≤ sqrt n}
    using n by (intro card-mono) auto
  finally show divisor-count n ≤ 2 * ... by simp
qed auto

lemma divisor-count-upper-bound:
  fixes n :: nat
  shows divisor-count n ≤ 2 * nat ⌊sqrt n⌋
proof (cases n = 0)
  case False
  have divisor-count n ≤ 2 * card {d. d dvd n ∧ d ≤ sqrt n}
    by (rule divisor-count-upper-bound-aux)
  also have card {d. d dvd n ∧ d ≤ sqrt n} ≤ card {1..nat ⌊sqrt n⌋}
    using False by (intro card-mono) (auto simp: le-nat-iff le-floor-iff Suc-le-eq
intro!: Nat.gr0I)
  also have ... = nat ⌊sqrt n⌋ by simp
  finally show ?thesis by simp
qed auto

lemma divisor-count-upper-bound':
  fixes n :: nat
  shows real (divisor-count n) ≤ 2 * sqrt n
proof -
  have real (divisor-count n) ≤ 2 * real (nat ⌊sqrt n⌋)
    using divisor-count-upper-bound[of n] by linarith
  also have ... ≤ 2 * sqrt n
    by simp
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

We are now ready to prove the ‘regular’ Pólya–Vinogradov inequality.

Apostol formulates it in the following way (Theorem 13.15, notation adapted):

‘If χ is any nonprincipal character mod n , then for all $x \geq 2$ we have $\sum_{m \leq x} \chi(m) = O(\sqrt{n} \log n)$.’

The precondition $x \geq 2$ here is completely unnecessary. The ‘Big-O’ notation is somewhat problematic since it does not make explicit in what way the variables are quantified (in particular the x and the χ). The statement of the theorem in this way (for a fixed character χ) seems to suggest that n is fixed here, which would make the use of ‘Big-O’ completely vacuous, since it is an asymptotic statement about n .

We therefore decided to formulate the inequality in the following more explicit way, even giving an explicit constant factor:

```

theorem (in dcharacter) polya-vinogradov-inequality:
  assumes nonprincipal:  $\chi \neq \text{principal-dchar } n$ 
  shows norm ( $\sum_{m=1..x} \chi m$ ) < 2 * sqrt n * ln n
proof -

```

```

have  $n \text{ div conductor} > 0$ 
  using  $n \text{ conductor-dvd dvd-div-eq-0-iff[of conductor } n]$  by auto
  have  $\text{norm } (\sum_{m=1..x} \chi \ m) < \text{sqrt conductor} * \ln \text{ conductor} * \text{divisor-count}$ 
     $(n \text{ div conductor})$ 
    using nonprincipal by (rule polya-vinogradov-inequality-explicit)
  also have  $\dots \leq \text{sqrt conductor} * \ln \text{ conductor} * (2 * \text{sqrt } (n \text{ div conductor}))$ 
    using conductor-gr-0  $\langle n \text{ div conductor} > 0 \rangle$ 
    by (intro mult-left-mono divisor-count-upper-bound') (auto simp: Suc-le-eq)
  also have  $\text{sqrt } (n \text{ div conductor}) = \text{sqrt } n / \text{sqrt conductor}$ 
    using conductor-dvd by (simp add: Real.real-of-nat-div real-sqrt-divide)
  also have  $\text{sqrt conductor} * \ln \text{ conductor} * (2 * (\text{sqrt } n / \text{sqrt conductor})) =$ 
     $2 * \text{sqrt } n * \ln \text{ conductor}$ 
    using conductor-gr-0  $n$  by (simp add: algebra-simps)
  also have  $\dots \leq 2 * \text{sqrt } n * \ln n$ 
    using conductor-le-modulus conductor-gr-0 by (intro mult-left-mono) auto
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

unbundle vec-lambda-syntax

end

```

References

- [1] T. M. Apostol. *Introduction to Analytic Number Theory*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer-Verlag, 1976.